# Table of Contents

## Getting Started

- Installing the API ................................................................. 11
- API configuration ................................................................. 14
- How_to_Develop_and_distribute_ ........................................ 17

## Support

- FAQ ..................................................................................... 20

## COM API

- Overview .............................................................................. 23
- Errors .................................................................................. 32
- Type Libraries ....................................................................... 34

### ZLib ................................................................................. 34

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMClasses</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIPrint</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIPrint.CancelPrint</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIPrint.FileName</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIPrint.IsComplete</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIPrint.StartPrint</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment.Delete</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment.Name</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachments</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachments.Add</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachments.Count</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachments.Item</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coversheet</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoverSheet.Name</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coversheets</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coversheets.Count</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coversheets.Item</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.CurrentPage</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.MessageBody</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.Name</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.NumConnectFails</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.NumPages</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.NumSendFails</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.NumSendOK</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device.User</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices.Count</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices.Item</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File</td>
<td>File.Delete, File.FileName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Files</td>
<td>Files.Add, Files.Count, Files.Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letterhead</td>
<td>Letterhead.Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letterheads</td>
<td>Letterheads.Count, Letterheads.Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Links</td>
<td>Links.Count, Links.Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageHistory.Organisation</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageHistory.PagesSent</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageHistory.RemoteServer</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageHistory.Route</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageHistory.RouteParams</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Attachments</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Body</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Comment</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.CoverText</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.CustomField</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Files</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.ImageFilePath</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.ImageStream</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Organisation</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Status</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Subject</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.Type</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageInfo.UserStatus</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages.Count</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages.Item</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages.MsgMsg</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Message</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.After</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Attachments</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Body</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Charge</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Comment</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.CoverSheet</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.CoverText</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.CustomField</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Delete</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Files</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Format</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.From</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Header</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Hold</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Letterhead</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Preview</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Priority</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Quality</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Recipients</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Send</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.SendTime</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Subject</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.Text</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewMessage.User</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outbox</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outbox.CheckNewMsgStatus</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outbox.GetMsg</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outbox.GetMsgList</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipient</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recipient.Delete................................................................................................................. 94
Recipient.Fax...................................................................................................................... 94
Recipient.Organisation......................................................................................................... 95
Recipient.To........................................................................................................................... 95
Recipient.Type...................................................................................................................... 96
Recipients ............................................................................................................................ 96
Recipients.AddFaxRecipient................................................................................................. 97
Recipients.AddLANRecipient............................................................................................... 98
Recipients.AddSMSRecipient............................................................................................... 98
Recipients.Count.................................................................................................................. 99
Recipients.Item.................................................................................................................... 99
Server ................................................................................................................................. 99
Server.Check......................................................................................................................... 100
Server.GetServerInfo........................................................................................................... 100
Server.Restart....................................................................................................................... 100
Server.Start.......................................................................................................................... 101
Server.Stop........................................................................................................................... 101
ServerInfo............................................................................................................................ 101
ServerInfo.Coversheets......................................................................................................... 102
ServerInfo.Deferred............................................................................................................ 103
ServerInfo.Devices.............................................................................................................. 103
ServerInfo.Headers............................................................................................................. 103
ServerInfo.Links.................................................................................................................. 104
ServerInfo.MaxDevices........................................................................................................ 104
ServerInfo.MaxLinks........................................................................................................... 104
ServerInfo.RemoteAccept.................................................................................................... 105
ServerInfo.RouterSub........................................................................................................... 105
ServerInfo.Scanning............................................................................................................ 105
ServerInfo.Sending.............................................................................................................. 106
ServerInfo.WaitingConvert................................................................................................. 106
ServerInfo.WaitingDevice.................................................................................................... 106
ServerInfo.WaitingResend.................................................................................................... 107
UserSession.......................................................................................................................... 107
UserSession.APPrint.......................................................................................................... 108
UserSession.Coversheet....................................................................................................... 108
UserSession.CreateNewMsg............................................................................................... 109
UserSession.FromName........................................................................................................ 109
UserSession.Inbox............................................................................................................... 109
UserSession.Logoff.............................................................................................................. 110
UserSession.Outbox............................................................................................................. 110
UserSession.SendSubmitFile............................................................................................... 110
UserSession.Server............................................................................................................ 111
UserSession.SystemArea...................................................................................................... 111
UserSession.UserArea......................................................................................................... 111
UserSession.UserInDir........................................................................................................ 112
UserSession.UserOutDir....................................................................................................... 112
ZIAP....................................................................................................................................... 112
ZIAP.GetZetafaxServerInfoFromAD...................................................................................... 113
ZIAP.GetZetafaxServersFromAD......................................................................................... 114
ZIAP.Logon.......................................................................................................................... 114
ZIAP.LogonAnonymous....................................................................................................... 115
ZIAP.RequestDir.................................................................................................................. 115
ZIAP.ServerDir.................................................................................................................... 116
ZIAP.SetZetafaxDir............................................................................................................... 116
C language API

Older API versions ............................................................................................................... 138

Function Overview .............................................................................................................. 140

Message information ........................................................................................................... 142

Message transmission history ......................................................................................... 145

Message defaults ................................................................................................................. 148

Server and device status .................................................................................................... 150

Function error returns and reference .................................................................................. 155

Alphabetical reference ......................................................................................................... 158

user_error .......................................................................................................................... 160
ZfxAbortMsg ...................................................................................................................... 161
ZfxAPIClosedown ............................................................................................................... 162
ZfxAPInit .......................................................................................................................... 163
ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus ..................................................................................................... 165
ZfxCheckServer ............................................................................................................... 167
ZfxCreateAutoFile ............................................................................................................. 168
ZfxCreateCtlFile ............................................................................................................... 170
ZfxCreateCtlFileEx ............................................................................................................ 172
ZfxCreateCtlFileFP ............................................................................................................ 174
ZfxCreateDataFile ............................................................................................................. 176
ZfxCreateDataFileFP ......................................................................................................... 177
ZfxDeleteMsg .................................................................................................................... 179
ZfxGetAPIVersion ............................................................................................................. 181
ZfxGetMsgDefaultsEx ........................................................................................................ 183
ZfxGetMsgHistory ............................................................................................................ 184
ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx ........................................................................................................ 187
ZfxGetMsgInfo .................................................................................................................. 190
ZfxGetMsgInfoEx .............................................................................................................. 192
ZfxGetMsgList ................................................................................................................... 194
ZfxGetMsgListEx .............................................................................................................. 196
## Dynamic Data Exchange

- ZfxGetServerStatus
- ZfxGetServerStatusEx
- ZfxGetSystemArea
- ZfxGetUserArea
- ZfxGetUserCoversheet
- ZfxGetUserFromname
- ZfxGetUserInDr
- ZfxHoldMsg
- ZfxMarkMsgAsRead
- ZfxReleaseMsg
- ZfxRestartServer
- ZfxRushMsg
- ZfxSendMsg
- ZfxSendMsgEx
- ZfxSendSubmitFile
- ZfxSendSubmitFileFP
- ZfxStartServer
- ZfxStopServer
- ZfxVBSendSubmitFile

Dynamic Data Exchange .......................................................... 227

Example DDE Macros ............................................................. 229

## Embedded Addressing

- Embedded Addressing Information ........................................ 232
- Commands ........................................................................... 233
- To ..................................................................................... 234
- Name .............................................................................. 235
- Fax ............................................................................... 236
- Organisation ..................................................................... 237
- Send .............................................................................. 238
- Preview .......................................................................... 239
- From .............................................................................. 240
- Coversheet ....................................................................... 241
- Quality ........................................................................... 242
- Letterhead ....................................................................... 243
- Priority ........................................................................... 244
- Time .............................................................................. 245
- Header ........................................................................... 246
- Attach ............................................................................ 247
- Charge ........................................................................... 248
- Discard .......................................................................... 249
- Subject .......................................................................... 250
- Note .............................................................................. 251
- Delete ........................................................................... 252

Using Embedded Addressing with Mail Merge .......................... 253

## ZSUBMIT

- Creating SUBMIT files ....................................................... 256
- SUBMIT file message option lines ...................................... 258
- After ............................................................................... 259

© 2012 Equisys plc
The API - Getting Started

Introduction to the API

Without the API
The normal method of submitting messages using Zetafax is to use the client program to manually specify the recipients and message settings. When sending a fax, when a file is printed to the Zetafax printer, or a file is selected for sending from within the client program, the addressing screens are automatically displayed and filled in by the user.

Using the API
Using the Zetafax API, there are five additional ways of submitting message to the Zetafax server. These additional methods have been designed to the automatic sending of messages from other applications not only feasible, but extremely easy to implement.

SMS messages as well as fax messages can be submitted to the Zetafax server with the Zetafax API. The ZSUBMIT program makes it simple to send SMS messages directly from other applications to mobile phones.

Submit files
The simplest method of sending messages is to create an ASCII file in a directory on a fileserver - a "SUBMIT" file. This file can contain both the contents of the message and the addressing information, or these may be broken into two files. Zetafax scans the directory for new files and automatically handles any files it finds, sending messages to either a fax addressee or mobile phone via SMS. A machine with the Zetafax client software installed can be used to monitor the process and resubmit any faxes that fail repeatedly.

Details on how to create SUBMIT files are given in Creating SUBMIT files.

Embedded addressing
Addressing instructions can be embedded into documents created by word processors and other applications to indicate where a fax should be sent, together with a wide range of settings such as the time of sending, priority, resolution, coversheet, and letterhead to use. The commands are embedded in the document using a special syntax; for example:

`%%[Fax:123 456 7890]`

When the document is printed using the Zetafax printer driver, the embedded addressing commands are used by the Zetafax client program in place of the addressing dialogs. Provided adequate details are given using embedded commands, no dialogs will be displayed and the fax or faxes will be submitted to the Zetafax server automatically.

When sending faxes automatically from other Windows applications, it may be simplest to embed the addressing information in the message itself using embedded commands, prior to printing it using the Zetafax Windows printer driver. This is supported as one of the API toolkit alternatives.

DDE commands
Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) may be used to pass addressing information across from a Windows application to the Zetafax client, prior to printing a message using the Zetafax Windows printer driver.

COM and C Language libraries
The most powerful way of passing faxes across to the Zetafax server for sending is using the COM or C language API. This allows for the monitoring of the status of a queued message, including the retrieval of a full history log once a message has completed.
Installing the API

The Zetafax API offers five methods of automatically submitting messages to the Zetafax server, the automatic submission program, embedded addressing, DDE and the COM and C language libraries which are all independent. This section explains how each feature is installed on your system. You should refer to the appropriate section once you have decided which method you intend to use.

Licensing of the API depends on which API product you have purchased. For users of Zetafax network fax software, please refer to the section entitled "Zetafax API Toolkit", and for Equisys (Independent Software Vendor) ISV partners, please refer to section entitled "Zetafax engine".

Zetafax API Toolkit
If Zetafax is currently up and running on your network, then the automatic submission, embedded addressing and DDE features of the Zetafax API are already installed! You only need to activate these features by adding the API toolkit license number in the modify license details dialog in the Zetafax Configuration program.

Fax engine
If Zetafax has been supplied to you as an Equisys (Independent Software Vendor) ISV partner, there is no need to add a separate API license as described above. The Zetafax fax engine products supplied to ISV partners include the API license as standard within the starter system license number.

ZSUBMIT
The ZSUBMIT program is distributed with the Zetafax server programs, and is stored in the same directory as the other programs (zf\SERVER by default, where zf is the server base directory specified when Zetafax was installed).

Embedded addressing
Embedded addressing requires the Zetafax printer driver to be installed on all of the Zetafax clients wishing to use this feature. The Zetafax printer driver is installed by running the Workstation Setup program (WKSETUP) - refer to the Installation and Configuration Guide for detailed instructions on using this program. There is limited support for embedded addressing available without the API, and the full functionality is provided when the API toolkit has been purchased.

DDE
Support for Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) is built in to the Zetafax client software. As for embedded addressing, there is limited support for DDE in the standard Zetafax software. Full support is available only when the API toolkit has been purchased.

C language API
The C language libraries and 32-bit dynamic link library are provided separately in a self-extracting executable. The appropriate libraries need to be copied into your development environment and if used,
the DLL needs to be copied to the relevant location. Please refer to C language API for more detailed information. Programs written using the Zetafax C language API may only be run on Zetafax systems with an API license.

**COM API**

Like all COM components ZfAPI32.dll must be registered before it can be used. This is done using the program regsvr32 as follows:

1. Ensure the program regsvr32 is present in the same location as the ZFAPI32.dll file.

2. In a DOS window, set to this directory, use the following command to run the registration program: Run %system32%\regsvr32 ZfAPI32.dll.

3. A dialog box should appear confirming that the registration was successful.

**Note:** If you have installed the Zetafax client onto your development computer, the COM API is installed and registered automatically. It is installed by default to C:\Program Files\Common Files\Equisys.
API configuration

From the Zetafax Configuration program, located on the Zetafax server, you can adjust the parameters specific to the ZSUBMIT program. Select the ZSUBMIT automatic file submission program option from the Server settings options:

Selecting this option will open the Zetafax - configuration options dialogue:
These options are already setup with values, allowing the ZSUBMIT program to be used however, you can change these settings to better meet your needs:

**Directory for files**

Specify the directory which the ZSUBMIT program looks in for SUBMIT files to send. Any files found whose names match the given specification (normally ".*SUB" - see Expert setup options will be interpreted as SUBMIT format files and submitted to the server for sending.

**Scan frequency**

Specify the polling interval, in seconds. This is how often the program looks for SUBMIT files in the directory for sending and check the status of messages already queued. Reducing this value will increase the processing overhead of the program.

**Zetafax user account**

Set up the user account details for use with auto submission of faxes.

**Default user**

Specify the Zetafax user account to be used when submitting files. All messages will be sent as if by this user, unless a user name is specified in the SUBMIT file. If the user name is left blank then each SUBMIT file must specify a user name.

**Allow any user**

Specify whether users can specify the Zetafax user name in the SUBMIT file, overriding the name given in the Default user field. Do not check this box if you want to ensure that messages can only be submitted as the given user when using the ZSUBMIT program (e.g. for permissions or security reasons).

**Delete successful messages**

Check this box if faxes that have been sent successfully (i.e. faxes that would be displayed on the Zetafax Client with a tick) should be deleted automatically. This is useful in systems where a large number of faxes are being submitted automatically and you just want to check for any which have failed.

**Maximum queued messages allowed**

Specify the maximum number of messages that may be active in the queue for this user at any one time.
If the value is 0 then any SUBMIT file found in the directory will be submitted to the server immediately, when it is found. Otherwise the file is only submitted if the number of active messages is less than the specified value. The program will wait for one of the existing messages to complete, before submitting the file.

**OK**

Save any changes that have been made to the ZSUBMIT automatic file submission program configuration, and exit the Zetafax - configuration options dialog.

**Cancel**

Do not save changes made to the ZSUBMIT automatic file submission program configuration, and exit the Zetafax - configuration options dialog.

**Reset**

Reset the ZSUBMIT automatic file submission program configuration to its default settings. The settings are not saved until either OK is clicked or another category icon is selected from the scroll (left).

If you use the scrolling icons on the left to move to another Category, any changes made to the ZSUBMIT automatic file submission program configuration are saved.

**Related topics**

*The ZSUBMIT program*
How to Develop and distribute your fax-enabled application

Developing your application

1) Request an Equisys API Developer Kit
The Equisys API Developer Kit is available to all Equisys ISV partners. Included in the kit is a 5 user, 2 lines Zetafax server and the developer tools required to develop fully integrated applications.

Full documentation on how to install the server software and on using the development tools is included in the documentation supplied with the developer kit. Additional resources are available free of charge in the support section of the Equisys web site http://www.equisys.com/

2) Install the Zetafax API and developer tools
The Zetafax API runs under Windows, and supports the same operating systems as the Zetafax server. One or more fax modems, active ISDN controllers or intelligent fax boards are required for sending and receiving faxes. Installation is a very simple process and should take less than 10 minutes.

During the install process, you will be required to enter a license number supplied with the system, which enables both the server and development tools.

You will also need to create a Zetafax user account to use for sending and receiving messages. This can be done during installation or afterwards, using the Zetafax Configuration program. We recommend that you either choose an account name and description like AUTOUSER or APIUSER, or one which is clearly connected with your company or application (e.g. MYCO or MYAPP). Note that you do not need to create a network account unless you require it for enhanced security - the Zetafax account does not need to be linked to a network login, though doing so will allow the Zetafax client to login automatically when started.

The installation steps required for the developer tools depend on the method you intend to use to integrate your application with the API, as follows:

**COM API and C language libraries:**
The Zetafax API is installed as part of the Zetafax API install to \zfax\ZFAPI. The installed folders contain libraries and include files; you should add the appropriate folders to your development tools (IDE).

API library functions communicate directly with the Zetafax server, using shared files. The API determines the location of the server through the presence of two files - either a file called ZETAFAX.INI, typically stored in the Program Files\Zetafax Server folder, or a file called ZFCLIENT.INI, typically stored either in the Program Files\Zetafax folder or the user's Application Data folder. ZETAFAX.INI is created when the Zetafax Server is installed. ZFCLIENT.INI is generated when the Zetafax client is run for the first time; however the file can sometimes be copied from another computer if preferred. In addition, registry values can be added to help the API locate these files. These registry values are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value Name</th>
<th>Registry Location</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZetafaxIniPath</td>
<td>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Equisys\Zetafax Server</td>
<td>String value pointing to ZETAFAX.INI file path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(e.g. c:\zfax\server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZetafaxClientIniPath</td>
<td>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Equisys\Zetafax</td>
<td>String value pointing to ZFCLIENT.INI file path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(e.g. c:\zfax\client)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ZSUBMIT:**
ZSUBMIT is an automatic submission program which is run automatically as part of the Zetafax server. It scans a single folder for messages to be sent - this is \zfax\SERVER\Z-TEMP by default, though the location can be changed in the Zetafax Configuration program.

To use ZSUBMIT from your application there are no specific installation requirements, other than to ensure
that the server is configured to look in the folder your application will use.

**Embedded addressing:**
Embedded addressing commands are handled by the Zetafax Printer and Zetafax client program. The Zetafax client must be installed on the application computer, and the Zetafax server and Zetafax client must be running before printing to the Zetafax Printer (though the Zetafax Printer will start the client automatically if set to login automatically).

**DDE:**
DDE commands are handled by the Zetafax client program. The Zetafax client must be installed on the application computer, and the Zetafax server and Zetafax client must be running before initiating a DDE conversation.

3) **Register the Zetafax API object model library (if you have not installed the Zetafax client)**
If you intend to use the COM API (e.g. from a Visual Basic program), then you will need to register the object model library on the development computer. You do this from a command prompt as follows:
- Change directory to the location of ZFAPI32.DLL
- Type the command REGSVR32 ZFAPI32.DLL
A dialog box should appear confirming that the registration was successful.
Note: If you have installed the Zetafax client onto your development computer, the COM API is installed and registered automatically. It is installed by default to C:\Program Files\Common Files\Equisys.

4) **Develop and test your custom application**
Develop your application as normal. We recommend that your test cases include a variety of error scenarios such as number busy retries; these will depend on the degree and method of integration used, and the extent to which the application is intended to cope with normal errors unattended.

For test purposes, devices on the Zetafax server can be configured in demonstration mode. In this mode of operation the server simulates sending messages without connecting to the device. This removes the need for external connections and destination devices, and reduces the cost for high volume testing.

You configure a device for demonstration mode by editing the configuration file SETUP.INI (located in zfax \SYSTEM\Z-DB). Find the section for the device towards the end of the file (e.g. [FCLASS-1]), then add the following line at the end of the section:

DemoMode: SLOW SEND

Now restart the Zetafax server, and check that the device controller reports Demonstration mode enabled as it starts.

Deploying your application at a customer site

1) **Obtain a Zetafax API product copy**
When you are ready to deploy your fax-enabled solution to your customer, you will need to purchase the appropriate API product for your application from Equisys. You should also ensure that your customer has the appropriate hardware i.e. a PC server, fax hardware and telephone lines available prior to installation.

2) **Install the Zetafax API**
The Zetafax API typically includes a 1 user, 1 line Zetafax server, with special licensing to enable the API options. The API products include a CD-Rom with the software and a license number. Please refer to the documentation supplied in your developer kit or on the API CD-ROM for installation instructions. During installation, the Zetafax server software will be automatically registered with Equisys.

Create a Zetafax user account to use for sending messages, using the Zetafax Configuration program. This will typically have the same account name used when developing the application (see above), since applications written using the COM API, C language libraries or ZSUBMIT may specify the user name when they run.

Test that the API is correctly configured by sending and receiving a fax using the client software. Instructions are supplied in the Software Guide supplied with your Developer Kit or on the CD-ROM.

3) **Install your custom application, including redistributable Zetafax API components**
After installing your application you may need to carry out additional steps, depending on the method your application uses to integrate with the API, as follows:
**COM API and C language libraries:**
Install the Zetafax client program (`zfax \SYSTEM\WKSETUP.EXE`), this will create a ZFCLIENT.INI file and also install the ZFAPI32.DLL.

Or

Alternatively, you can create the ZFCLIENT.INI file by copying it from another computer if preferred and copy the following redistributable file from the API Developer kit:

File ZFAPI32.DLL, to be copied to `%windir%\SYSTEM32`

**ZSUBMIT:**
There are no specific installation requirements, other than to ensure that the server is configured to look in the folder your application will use.

**Embedded addressing:**
If your custom application is not running on the Zetafax server computer, install the Zetafax client by running the Zetafax Workstation Setup program (`zfax \SYSTEM\WKSETUP.EXE`).

**DDE:**
If your custom application is not running on the Zetafax server computer, install the Zetafax client by running the Zetafax Workstation Setup program (`zfax \SYSTEM\WKSETUP.EXE`). You may also wish to set the Zetafax client to startup automatically, by copying it to the Startup program group.

4) **Register the ZFAPI.DLL (if you are using COM API and have not installed the Zetafax client)**
If your custom application uses the COM API (e.g. from a Visual Basic program), then you will need to register the object model library on the server on which your custom application is installed. You can do this manually from a command prompt as follows:

Change directory to the location of ZFAPI32.DLL (i.e. `%windir%\SYSTEM32`) 
Type the command `REGSVR32 ZFAPI32.DLL` A dialog box should appear confirming that the registration was successful.

Alternatively you can do this automatically by calling REGSVR32 from your install program.

**Note:** If you have installed the Zetafax client, the COM API is installed and registered automatically. It is installed by default to `C:\Program Files\Common Files\Equisys`. 
Contact and Support

If you require assistance with using or operating the software, please follow this procedure:

1. Read the on-line help manuals.
2. Search the support pages, and especially the technical notes section, on the Equisys web site at: http://www.equisys.com/support
3. Contact the software supplier from whom you purchased the software. In most cases the supplier will be able to provide support.

Please note that support is only available in selected countries, and you should contact your distributor for availability.

Please feel free to contact Equisys (or any of our distributors) with any comments or suggestions you may have about the software or the manual.

Equisys plc
http://www.equisys.com

Sales
Tel  (020) 7203 4001
Fax  (020) 7203 4005
sales@equisys.com

Technical support
Tel  (020) 7203 4002
Fax  (020) 7203 4005
support@equisys.com

Equisys Inc (USA and Canada)

Sales
Tel  (770) 772 7201
Fax  (770) 442 5789
sales@zetafax.com

Technical support
Tel(678) 942 7250
Fax(770) 442 5789
support@zetafax.com
Frequently Asked Questions

Q: What is the difference between the COM API and the C API?
A: The COM API is a wrapper for the C API. It adds a hierarchical structure to the function calls, and represents the API's complex structures as collections of objects. It was written to make the API more accessible from people writing applications with scripting languages and Visual Basic.

Q: Can you show me some code?
A: Using the COM API from within Visual Basic to send a high priority fax in 9 lines:

```vbs
' Declare objects
Dim oZfAPI As New ZfLib.ZfAPI
Dim oUserSession As ZfLib.UserSession
Dim oNewMessage As ZfLib.NewMessage

' Logon and create new message:
Set oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("JJONES", False)
Set oNewMessage = oUserSession.CreateNewMsg

' Set properties:
oNewMessage.Recipients.AddFaxRecipient "Sam Smith", _"ACME plc", "020 7123 4567"
oNewMessage.Text = "I am a fax!"
oNewMessage.Priority = zfPriorityUrgent

' Send!
oNewMessage.Send
```

Q: What can you do with the COM API?
A: You can use the API to send faxes and to enumerate sent and received faxes. It can also be used to stop and start and gather status information about the Zetafax server, its devices and its LCR links.

Q: What can you not do with the COM API?
A: You cannot use the COM API to add, edit or delete users, or change the Zetafax server's configuration.

Q: With which development environments can the COM API be used?
A: It is compatible with all development environments which support COM, e.g. Visual Basic 6, Visual C++ 5 and 6, and Visual Studio .NET.

Q: Can you use the COM API with ASP?
A: Yes, but if the Zetafax server is installed on another computer you need to make sure that the web site is running as a user with permissions to access network drives, not the IWAM, IUSR or ASPNET accounts. (On Windows 2000 this could be done with COM+).

Q: In what language is the COM API written?
A: The API is written in C, the COM API is written in C++.

Q: With which operating systems is the COM API compliant?
A: It is supported on all operating systems supported by the Zetafax client. (95, 98, Me, NT4, W2K, W2K3 and XP).

Q: Does the COM API work with managed code?
A: Yes. Once the COM API is registered you need to import it as a reference.
Q: Is the API thread-safe?
A: No. If you are using the API in a multi-threaded application it is best to protect all access to the Zetafax API with a critical section.

Q: How do you secure the COM API?
A: Zetafax stores user's files on the file system. To secure Zetafax you use NT security to only allow certain people access to each user's files.

Q: How does the COM API handle authentication?
A: You have to log on as a Zetafax user to use the COM API. To stop someone logging on to another user's account you have to use NT security on your file system.

Q: Which file formats are supported by the COM API?
A: By default, the API only supports text, G3N, G3F and some standard graphics formats. (Such as GIFs or Bitmaps). However, if you have the document rendering add-on, Doctiff, you can use over 200 other file types as well (see ZTN1261 - INFO File types supported by document conversion add on DOCTIFF).

Q: Can the COM API handle files as streams?
A: No, the API assumes that all files are already stored on the file system.

Q: Does the COM API support events?
A: No, you have to poll for changes.

Q: Can I use the COM API to send SMS messages?
A: Yes, however in the current version of the COM API the method is marked as hidden in the type library.

See ZTN1239 - HOWTO Develop and redistribute your fax-enabled application for details.

References
ZTN1239 - HOWTO Develop and redistribute your fax-enabled application
ZTN1261 - INFO File types supported by document conversion add on DOCTIFF
COM API

This help provides assistance on the COM API and the Zetafax Object Model.

For a brief introduction please read the Overview.

The details of the individual objects can be found in the ZfLib library.
Overview

Introduction

This document tells you how to configure and use the COM API.

Registration

Like all COM components ZfAPI32.dll must be registered before it can be used. This is done using the program regsvr32 as follows:

1. Change directory to location of ZfAPI32.dll
2. Run %system32%\regsvr32 ZfAPI32.dll
3. A dialog box should appear confirming that the registration was successful.

Using the COM API in Visual Basic

The COM API is primarily intended for people using Visual Basic. There are two ways of doing this:

- The recommended way is to add the Zfapi32 type library as a reference to your project. This enables early binding and access to all the constants and interfaces:

  ' Create new Zetafax object and Logon
  Dim oZfAPI as New ZfLib.ZfAPI
  Dim oUserSession as ZfLib.UserSession
  Set oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", False)

- You can also use the IDispatch interface and create objects using CreateObject and the ProgID:

  ' Create new Zetafax OBJECT USING CreateObject and Logon
  DIM oZfAPI AS OBJECT
  DIM oUserSession AS OBJECT
  Set oZfAPI = CreateObject("ZfAPI32.ZfAPI")
  Set oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", FALSE)

Using the COM API in Visual C++

There are three ways of accessing COM objects in Visual C++:

- Win32 API. (Only for those who like to do it the hard way!)
- MFC OLE can be used to generate class wrappers for the ZfAPI32 type library using the Class Wizard.
- People using version 5.0 and later of Visual C++ can use the #import compiler directive to import ZfAPI32.dll. The compiler generates header files containing classes wrapping the interfaces, smart pointers, and the typedefs for the enumerations. This is the recommended way to use the COM API in Visual C++.

For example:

// Import Zetafax DLL without the ZfLib namespace this will
// generate two header files, ZfAPI32.tlh and ZfAPI32.tli,
// which contain the definitions of the interfaces and enums
#import "ZfAPI32.dll" no_namespace

void DoSomething()
{
    // Create new Zetafax object and Logon
    IZfAPIPtr pZfAPI(_T("ZfAPI32.ZfAPI"));
Using the COM API in .NET

1. From within Visual Studio select the add a reference option. The following menu will appear:

   ![Add Reference Menu](image)

   2. Select the COM tab option

   3. Move to the end of the list, and search for the Zfapi32 1.4 Type library component. Select it by ensuring the component is selected and clicking on the Ok button.

   Should the Zfapi32 1.4 Type library component not be present, then select the browse option to search for the *.dll file. In a standard Zetafaxsetup, this file is found in the following location:

   `C:\Program Files\Zetafax Server\ZFAPI\LIB\I386\Microsoft`

   4. You can now call functions present in the Zetafax library, by using references to the Zflib namespace within your code for example:

   ```csharp
   ZfLib.ZAPI
   ```

   5. Ensure you distribute the interop.zflib.dll file found in the build directory of your code.

**Code Samples**

The following samples are written in C# and Visual Basic .NET. The other .NET languages (Managed C++, Visual J#) are very similar and these examples can easily be adapted for use in these environments.
Note: To avoid the usage of long type-names declare the following namespace at the top of the file:
using ZfLib;

The API fully supports exception handling and it is recommended that you use the try-catch mechanism to receive meaningful error messages and descriptions from the Zetafax COM API. (The examples below demonstrate this).

1. The following example demonstrates sending a fax using the COM API:

**VB.NET:**

```vbnet
' Declare objects
Dim oZfAPI As New ZfLib.ZfAPI
Dim oUserSession As ZfLib.UserSession
Dim oNewMessage As ZfLib.NewMessage

Try

' Logon and create NewMessage:
   oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", False)
oNewMessage = oUserSession.CreateNewMsg

' Set properties:
oNewMessage.Recipients.AddFaxRecipient("Sam Smith", _
   "ACME plc", _
   "020 7123 4567")

   oNewMessage.Text = "I am a fax!"
oNewMessage.Priority = ZfLib.PriorityEnum.zfPriorityUrgent

' Send!
oNewMessage.Send()

Catch ex As Exception
   System.Windows.Forms.MessageBox.Show(ex.Message,
   "ZetaFax Error",
   MessageBoxButtons.OK,
   MessageBoxIcon.Error)
End Try
```

**C#:**

```csharp
// Declare objects
ZfAPIClass oZfAPI = new ZfAPIClass();
UserSession oUserSession;
ZfLib.NewMessage oNewMessage;

try
{

    // Logon and create NewMessage:
    oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", false);
oNewMessage = oUserSession.CreateNewMsg();

    // Set properties:
oNewMessage.Recipients.AddFaxRecipient("Sam Smith", _
       "ACME plc", _
       "020 7123 4567"); //TO

    //Organization
    oNewMessage.Text = "I am a fax!";
    oNewMessage.Priority = ZfLib.PriorityEnum.zfPriorityUrgent;

    oNewMessage.Send();
}
```
2. The code below demonstrates message information handling:

**VB.NET:**

```vbnet
' Declare objects:
Dim strBody As String
Dim oZfAPI As New ZfLib.ZfAPI
Dim oUserSession As ZfLib.UserSession
Dim oMessage As ZfLib.Message
Dim oMsgHist As ZfLib.MessageHistory

Try
    strBody = "~ZAPI001"

    ' Logon and get message:
    oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", False)
    oMessage = oUserSession.Outbox.GetMsg(strBody)

    ' Display information about the message
    With oMessage.GetMsgInfo()
        txtCaption.Text = .Body
        txtSubject.Text = .Subject
        txtComment.Text = .Comment
    End With

    ' Display the number and call duration for each recipient:
    Dim MessageHistoryEnum As IEnumerator
    MessageHistoryEnum = oMessage.GetMsgHistories.GetEnumerator()
    While MessageHistoryEnum.MoveNext
        oMsgHist = MessageHistoryEnum.Current
        lstHistory.Items.Add("To: " & oMsgHist.Name & 
        * Time Taken:" & oMsgHist.Date.ToString())
    End While
End Try
```

**C#:**

```csharp
using System.Collections.Generic;

public class Message
{
    public string Body { get; set; }
    public string Subject { get; set; }
    public string Comment { get; set; }
    // Other properties...
}

public class MessageHistory
{
    public string Name { get; set; }
    public DateTime Date { get; set; }
    // Other properties...
}

class ZfAPI
{
    public Message GetMessage(string body)
    {
        // Logic to get message...
        return new Message();
    }

    public MessageHistory GetMessageHistory(string messageName)
    {
        // Logic to get message history...
        return new MessageHistory();
    }

    public void Logon(string username, bool admin)
    {
        // Logic to logon...
    }

try
{
    strBody = "~ZAPI001";

    // Logon and get message:
oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", false);
oMessage = oUserSession.Outbox.GetMsg(strBody);

    // Display information about the message
    txtCaption.Text = oMessage.GetMsgInfo().Body;
    txtSubject.Text = oMessage.GetMsgInfo().Subject;
    txtComment.Text = oMessage.GetMsgInfo().Comment;

    // Display the number and call duration for each recipient:
    string szFormattedHistoryItem;
    IEnumerator MessageHistoryEnum = oMessage.GetMsgHistories().GetEnumerator();
    while (MessageHistoryEnum.MoveNext())
    {
        szFormattedHistoryItem = string.Format("To:{0} TimeTaken: {1}", oMsgHist.Name, oMsgHist.Date.ToString());
        lstHistory.Items.Add(szFormattedHistoryItem);
    }
}
catch (System.Runtime.InteropServices.COMException ex)
{
}

3. The following code demonstrates how to retrieve Zetafax device information:

**VB.NET:**

' Declare objects:
Dim oZfAPI As New ZfLib.ZfAPI
Dim oUserSession As ZfLib.UserSession
Dim oDevices As ZfLib.Devices
Dim oDevice As ZfLib.Device

Try
' Logon and get devices:
oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", False)
oDevices = oUserSession.Server.GetServerInfo().Devices

' Enumerate devices adding information to Listbox:
Dim DeviceEnum As IEnumerator
DeviceEnum = oDevices.GetEnumerator()
While DeviceEnum.MoveNext

'Iterate through the devices
    oDevice = DeviceEnum.Current
    lstDevices.Items.Add(oDevice.Name & " " & oDevice.User)
End While
Catch ex As Exception
End Try

C#:

// Declare objects:
ZfAPIClass oZfAPI = new ZfAPIClass();
UserSession oUserSession;
ZfLib.Devices oDevices;
ZfLib.Device oDevice;

try
{
    // Logon and get devices:
    oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", false);
    oDevices = oUserSession.Server.GetServerInfo().Devices;

    // Enumerate devices adding information to ListBox:
    IEnumerator DeviceEnum = oDevices.GetEnumerator();
    while (DeviceEnum.MoveNext())
    {
        oDevice = (ZfLib.Device)DeviceEnum.Current;
        lstDevices.Items.Add(oDevice.Name + " " + oDevice.User);
    }
}
catch (System.Runtime.InteropServices.COMException ex)
{
    System.Windows.Forms.MessageBox.Show(ex.Message, "ZetaFax Error", MessageBoxButtons.OK, MessageBoxIcon.Error);
}

The Zetafax Object Model

This diagram shows the various objects in the Zetafax object model, and how they are linked. Normal rectangles represent objects, shaded rectangles represent collections.

The ZfAPI object is the only object that can be created directly. All others can only be accessed by traversing the object tree.
Examples of the use of the COM API

Add the name of each device and the person using it into a list box:

' Declare objects:
Dim oZfAPI As New ZfLib.ZfAPI
Dim oUserSession As ZfLib.UserSession
Dim oDevices As ZfLib.Devices
Dim oDevice As ZfLib.Device

' Logon and get devices:
Set oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", False)
Set oDevices = oUserSession.Server.ServerInfo.Devices

' Enumerate devices adding information to Listbox:
For Each oDevice In oDevices
    DevicesList.AddItem oDevice.Name & " " & oDevice.User
Next

Display information about a specific message:

' Declare objects:
Dim strBody As String
Dim oZfAPI As New ZfLib.ZfAPI
Dim oUserSession As ZfLib.UserSession
Dim oMessage As ZfLib.Message
Dim oMsgHist As ZfLib.MessageHistory

strBody = "~ZAPI001"

' Logon and get message:
Set oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", False)
Set oMessage = oUserSession.Outbox.GetMsg(strBody)

' Display information about the message
With oMessage
    msgForm.Caption = .Body
    txtSubject = .Subject
    txtComment = .Comment
End With

' Display the number and call duration for each recipient:
For Each oMsgHist In oMessage.GetMsgHistories
    lstHistory.AddItem
    "To: " & oMsgHist.AddrNum & _
    " Time Taken:" & oMsgHist.Connection
Next

Send a fax:

' Declare objects
Dim oZfAPI As New ZfLib.ZfAPI
Dim oUserSession As ZfLib.UserSession
Dim oNewMessage As ZfLib.NewMessage

' Logon and create NewMessage:
Set oUserSession = oZfAPI.Logon("ADMINIST", False)
Set oNewMessage = oZfAPI.CreateNewMsg

' Set properties:
oNewMessage.Recipients.AddFaxRecipient "Sam Smith", _
    "ACME plc", "020 7123 4567"
oNewMessage.Text = "I am a fax!"
oNewMessage.Priority = zfPriorityUrgent

' Send!
oNewMessage.Send
## Error Codes

This document explains what various errors returned by the COM API mean:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Name</th>
<th>Zetafax Error</th>
<th>Dispatch Error</th>
<th>COM error</th>
<th>Error description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E_INVALID_PARAM</td>
<td>0xF700</td>
<td>62720</td>
<td>0x8004F700</td>
<td>An invalid parameter was passed to the Zetafax API.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APIE_NOT_INIT</td>
<td>0xF701</td>
<td>62721</td>
<td>0x8004F701</td>
<td>A call was made to the API when it had not been initialised with a call to ZfAPI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INIT_FAIL</td>
<td>0xF702</td>
<td>62722</td>
<td>0x8004F702</td>
<td>The API failed to initialise Logon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INVALID_ZF_FILE</td>
<td>0xF703</td>
<td>62723</td>
<td>0x8004F703</td>
<td>The API had problems reading ZETAFAX.INI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INVALID_ZF_US</td>
<td>0xF704</td>
<td>62724</td>
<td>0x8004F704</td>
<td>An attempt was made to log on to the API with an invalid user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CANNOT_LOG_ON</td>
<td>0xF705</td>
<td>62725</td>
<td>0x8004F705</td>
<td>The user was already logged on or the API cannot access their directories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_PATH_NOT_FOUND</td>
<td>0xF706</td>
<td>62726</td>
<td>0x8004F706</td>
<td>The API was passed an invalid path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_TOO_MANY_FILES</td>
<td>0xF707</td>
<td>62727</td>
<td>0x8004F707</td>
<td>There are too many files in this directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_FILE_CREATE_ERROR</td>
<td>0xF708</td>
<td>62728</td>
<td>0x8004F708</td>
<td>Too many open files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_FILE_OPEN_ERR</td>
<td>0xF709</td>
<td>62729</td>
<td>0x8004F709</td>
<td>Could not open file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_ERROR</td>
<td>0xF70A</td>
<td>62730</td>
<td>0x8004F70A</td>
<td>Could not read/write to file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_FILE_NOT_FOUND</td>
<td>0xF70B</td>
<td>62731</td>
<td>0x8004F70B</td>
<td>The file could not be found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING</td>
<td>0xF70C</td>
<td>62732</td>
<td>0x8004F70C</td>
<td>The Zetafax server isn't running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INVALID_DATA_FORMAT</td>
<td>0xF70D</td>
<td>62733</td>
<td>0x8004F70D</td>
<td>The data file format specified is not recognised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_MSG_UNKNOWN</td>
<td>0xF70E</td>
<td>62734</td>
<td>0x8004F70E</td>
<td>The specified message could not be found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_MSG_EXISTS</td>
<td>0xF70F</td>
<td>62735</td>
<td>0x8004F70F</td>
<td>An attempt was made to modify a message that wasn't completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR</td>
<td>0xF711</td>
<td>62736</td>
<td>0x8004F710</td>
<td>This message already exists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INFO_FILE_ERR</td>
<td>0xF712</td>
<td>62737</td>
<td>0x8004F711</td>
<td>Could not open MSGDIR.CTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INFO_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>0xF713</td>
<td>62738</td>
<td>0x8004F712</td>
<td>Error updating/accessing MSGDIR.CTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CTL_FILE_OPEN_ERROR</td>
<td>0xF714</td>
<td>62739</td>
<td>0x8004F713</td>
<td>MSGDIR.CTL is invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CTL_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>0xF715</td>
<td>62740</td>
<td>0x8004F714</td>
<td>Error handling .SUB file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CTL_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>0xF716</td>
<td>62741</td>
<td>0x8004F715</td>
<td>The buffer in which to return data was too small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CTL_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>0xF717</td>
<td>62742</td>
<td>0x8004F716</td>
<td>One or more lines in the specified .SUB file were invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CTL_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>0xF718</td>
<td>62743</td>
<td>0x8004F717</td>
<td>Cannot read user's USER.INI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CTL_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>0xF719</td>
<td>62744</td>
<td>0x8004F718</td>
<td>The API was unable to open the message's CTL file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_CTL_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>0xF71A</td>
<td>62745</td>
<td>0x8004F719</td>
<td>Error reading/writing CTL file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Code</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF71A</td>
<td>CTL file is corrupt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF71B</td>
<td>The Zetafax server is running</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF71C</td>
<td>The API could not launch SYSMAN.EXE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF71E</td>
<td>Problems accessing SETUP.INI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF71F</td>
<td>The function failed because a user defined callback function returned &quot;Abort and Stop&quot; status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF720</td>
<td>The specified function did not complete within the timeout period</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF724</td>
<td>The API ran out of memory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF725</td>
<td>The API could not find the Zetafax licence</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF726</td>
<td>Your Zetafax licence does not permit you to use the API</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF727</td>
<td>The API couldn't find the user of this session</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF728</td>
<td>Access Denied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF730</td>
<td>The collection is full</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This is a list of the objects and enumerations that appear in the Zetafax COM library.

**Groups**

**COM Classes**

- **API Print**
  This object allows the API to print via the Zetafax Printer.
  The *Attachment* object contains the name of a Zetafax attachment to be attached to a message before it is sent.

- **Attachment**
  The *Attachments* collection object contains *Attachment* objects.

- **Attachments**
  The *Coversheet* class represents a Zetafax coversheet.

- **Coversheet**
  The *Coversheets* collection object contains *Coversheet* objects.

- **Coversheets**
  The *Device* object contains the configuration information and status of a device attached to the Zetafax server.

- **Device**
  The *Devices* collection contains *Device* objects.

- **Devices**
  The *File* object contains the path of a file to be attached to the message before it is sent.

- **File**
  The *Files* collection object contains *File* objects. To attach Zetafax attachments to the message use the *Attachments* collection.

- **Files**
  The *Inbox* object represents a user's Zetafax IN directory.

- **Inbox**
  The *Letterhead* class represents a Zetafax letterhead.

- **Letterhead**
  The *Letterheads* collection object contains Letterhead objects.

- **Letterheads**
  The *Link* object allows a user to retrieve information on the status of a link. It also provides statistics on the Link's performance.

- **Link**
  The *Links* collection contains *Link* objects.

- **Links**
  The *Message* object allows access to the details of sent
and received messages. The MessageHistories collection represents a message's transmission history and contains MessageHistory objects.

- **MessageHistories**

- **MessageHistory**

  The MessageHistory object contains an item in a message's transmission history.

- **MessageInfo**

  The MessageInfo object contains information about a single Message object.

- **Messages**

  The Messages collection contains Message objects from either a User's Inbox or Outbox.

- **NewMessage**

  The NewMessage object allows the logged on user to prepare and submit a new message to the Zetafax server for sending.

- **Outbox**

  The Outbox object represents a user's Zetafax OUT directory.

- **Recipient**

  The Recipient object contains address details of an addressee for whom a message is intended.

- **Recipients**

  The Recipients collection object contains Recipient objects.

- **Server**

  The Server object allows control over the Zetafax server, and access to objects describing the server's state.

- **ServerInfo**

  The ServerInfo object exposes the status and configuration of the Zetafax server.

- **UserSession**

  The UserSession object contains details about a Zetafax user's configuration, messages and gives you the ability to create new messages for sending.

- **ZfAPI**

  The ZfAPI object is the Application object of the COM version of the API, and is the only object that can be created directly. You must create this object and logon before you can access any of the other objects.

### Type Definitions

- **DevStatusEnum**

  The DevStatusEnum enumeration specifies the current status of a Device.

- **EventEnum**

  The EventEnum enumeration specifies the event described in
FaxTypeEnum specifies how a recipient will be sent a message.
FormatEnum specifies the format of the data file to be sent.
HeaderEnum specifies the content of the header line to appear in the top page of each fax.
LinkStatusEnum specifies the current status of an LCR link.
PriorityEnum specifies the priority of an outgoing message.
QualityEnum specifies the resolution when sending a fax.
RouteEnum specifies the type of route used.
SendTimeEnum specifies when a message will be sent.
StatusEnum specifies the current status of a message.
UserStatusEnum specifies the 'user status' of a message (that is the user's awareness of the message).
ZfErr enumeration specifies the errors returned the API.

ZfLib.APIPrint

This object allows the API to print via the Zetafax Printer.

Groups

Operations

- **CancelPrint**: This method cancels the API print mode.
- **IsComplete**: This method checks if the Zetafax Printer has completed spooling the print output file.
- **StartPrint**: This method switches the Zetafax Printer into API Print mode.

Read-only Properties

- **FileName**: Returns the print spool filename.
Sub CancelPrint()

This method cancels the API print mode.

Remarks

When the StartPrint method is called, the Zetafax Printer is set to API Print mode; the next job will be treated as an API print job. If you have called StartPrint but an error has occurred during printing, you should call CancelPrint to clear the API print mode. Any subsequent jobs sent to the Zetafax Printer will then be handled in the usual way (e.g. they will be sent to the Zetafax Client).

See Also
APIPrint.StartPrint, APIPrint.IsComplete

---

Property FileName As String

Returns the print spool filename.

Return Value

[out, retval]
The print spool filename

Remarks

This method returns the print spool filename that was set by StartPrint.

See Also
APIPrint.StartPrint
ZfLib.APIPrint.IsComplete

Function IsComplete( ) As Boolean

This method checks if the Zetafax Printer has completed spooling the print output file.

Return Value
Completion status

Remarks
This method works by checking the lock status on the output file. If the permissions on the file are not sufficient to open for writing, the method will return access denied.

ZfLib.APIPrint.StartPrint

Sub StartPrint( ByVal bszFileName As String )

This method switches the Zetafax Printer into API Print mode.

Parameters
bszFileName Filename to print to

Remarks
Once this method has been called, the next print job sent to the Zetafax Printer under the current user context will be sent to the specified file. The Zetafax Client will not be launched. As soon as the Zetafax Printer begins processing the print job, the API print mode is cleared and subsequent jobs will be processed as normal.

See Also
APIPrint.IsComplete, APIPrint.CancelPrint

ZfLib.Attachment

The Attachment object contains the name of a Zetafax attachment to be attached to a message before it is sent.

Groups
Operations
The `Delete` method removes an Attachment item from the Attachments collection.

**Read/Write Properties**

**Name**

The `Name` property returns the name of the attachment.

---

**ZfLib.Attachment.Delete**

Sub Delete()  

The `Delete` method removes an Attachment item from the Attachments collection.

**See Also**  
Attachments, NewMessage

---

**ZfLib.Attachment.Name**

Property Name As String  

The `Name` property returns the name of the attachment.

**Return Value**  

[out, retval]  

The name of the attachment.

**See Also**  
Attachments, NewMessage

---

**ZfLib.Attachments**

The Attachments collection object contains Attachment objects.
Remarks
This collection contains attachment objects. These are Zetafax graphics attachments. To add files to the message use the Files collection. The Attachments collection cannot contain more than 30 objects.

Groups
Operations

- **Add**
  The `Add` method adds an Attachment to the collection.

Read-only Properties

- **Count**
  The `Count` property returns the number of Attachment items in the collection.

- **Item**
  The `Item` property returns the specified Attachment object.

See Also
Attachment, Files

---

**ZLib.Attachments.Add**

Function `Add(ByVal bszFile As String) As ZLib.Attachment`

The `Add` method adds an Attachment to the collection.

**Parameters**

- **bszFile**
  The name of the attachment to be added to the collection.

**Return Value**

The new Attachment object

**Remarks**

If the attachment is taken from the Z-GRAPH directory, and is identified by it's Zetafax name, not it's file name.

See Also
Attachment, NewMessage
ZfLib.Attachments.Count

Property Count As Long

The Count property returns the number of Attachment items in the collection.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The number of items in the collection

ZfLib.Attachments.Item

Property Item(ByVal var As Variant) As ZfLib.Attachment

The Item property returns the specified Attachment object.

Parameters

var

[in]

The index of the Attachment object to retrieve from the collection.

Return Value

The Attachment object retrieved from the collection.

ZfLib.Coversheet

The Coversheet class represents a Zetafax coversheet.

Groups

Read-only Properties

Name

The Name property returns the name of the Coversheet.
### ZfLib.Coversheet.Name

**Property Name As String**

The Name property returns the name of the Coversheet.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

**See Also**

Coversheets

### ZfLib.Coversheets

The Coversheets collection object contains Coversheet objects.

**Groups**

Read-only Properties

- **Count**
  
  The Count property returns the number of Coversheet items in the collection.

- **Item**
  
  The Item property returns a coversheet item from the collection.

**See Also**

Coversheet, ServerInfo

### ZfLib.Coversheets.Count

**Property Count As Long**

The Count property returns the number of Coversheet items in the collection.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]
The number of coversheet items in the Coversheets collection

See Also

ServerInfo, Coversheet

---

**ZfLib.Coversheets.Item**

Property `Item( ByVal var As Variant ) As ZfLib.Coversheet`

The Item property returns a coversheet item from the collection.

**Parameters**

`var`

[in]

The index of the coversheet to retrieve from the collection.

**Return Value**

The Coversheet object retrieved from the Coversheets collection

**Remarks**

The Coversheets property needs to be called using the ServerInfo object to retrieve an updated version of the Coversheets collection.

Also See:

Coversheet, ServerInfo

---

**ZfLib.Device**

The Device object contains the configuration information and status of a device attached to the Zetafax server.

**Groups**

Read-only Properties

- **CurrentPage**
  - The CurrentPage property returns the current page being sent by the device.

- **MsgBody**
  - The MsgBody property returns the body of the file name of the control file currently...
Name

The **Name** property returns the name of the device. This comprises the Device Type and Device Number separated by a hyphen. An Example of a Device name might be FLASS-3.

NumConnectFails

The **NumConnectFails** property returns the number of send attempts by the device that failed to connect.

NumPages

The **NumPages** property returns the number of pages in the message currently being processed.

NumSendFails

The **NumSendFails** property returns the number of send attempts that failed after the device connected successfully.

NumSendOK

The **NumSendOK** property returns the number of messages the device has sent successfully.

Status

The **Status** property returns the current status of the Device object.

User

The **User** property returns the Username of the owner of the message currently being processed by the device.

---


Property **CurrentPage** As Short

The **CurrentPage** property returns the current page being sent by the device.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The current page being sent by the device.

See Also

Devices

---

**ZfLib.Device.MsgBody**

Property **MsgBody** As String

The **MsgBody** property returns the body of the file name of the control file currently being processed by the device.

Return Value

[out, retval]
The body name of the message control file

**Remarks**

Message bodies are made up of a “~”, a four letter identifier, and a three letter/digit unique number. An example of a message body might be ~ZAPI001.

**Also See:** Devices

---

**ZfLib.Device.Name**

Property Name As String

The Name property returns the name of the device. This comprises the Device Type and Device Number separated by a hyphen. An Example of a Device name might be FLASS-3.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]
The name of the device

**Remarks**

**Also See:** Devices

---

**ZfLib.Device.NumConnectFails**

Property NumConnectFails As Short

The NumConnectFails property returns the number of send attempts by the device that failed to connect.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]
The number of send attempts by the device that failed because of connection problems.

---

**ZfLib.Device.NumPages**
Property **NumPages** As Short

The **NumPages** property returns the number of pages in the message currently being processed.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The number of pages in the message currently being processed.

**Remarks**

The coversheet is included in the number of pages being sent.

---

Property **Route** As RouteEnum

The **Route** property returns the route type used to send a message.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

This is the route type used to send a message.

---

Property **NumSendOK** As Short

The **NumSendOK** property returns the number of messages the device has sent successfully.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The number of messages sent successfully on the device
**ZfLib.Device.User**

Property User As String

The User property returns the Username of the owner of the message currently being processed by the device.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The user configured to use the device

**See Also**

Devices

---

**ZfLib.Devices**

The Devices collection contains Device objects.

**Remarks**

The collection, and the items in the collection, represent a snap-shot of the Devices' status. If you want to update the collection you need to get a new ServerInfo object from the Server object. Objects cannot be added or removed from this collection. This collection cannot exceed 100 objects.

**Groups**

Read-only Properties

- **Count** The Count property returns the number of Device items in the collection.
- **Item** The Item property returns a device item from the collection.

**See Also**

Device, ServerInfo, Server

---

**ZfLib.Devices.Count**
Property Count As Long

The Count property returns the number of Device items in the collection.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The number of device items in the Devices collection

See Also

ServerInfo, Device

---

ZfLib.Devices.Item

Property Item(ByVal var As Variant) As ZfLib.Device

The Item property returns a device item from the collection.

Parameters

var

[in]

The index of the device to retrieve from the collection.

Return Value

The Device object retrieved from the Devices collection

Remarks

The Devices property needs to be called using the ServerInfo object to retrieve the update version version of the Devices collection.

Also See: Device, ServerInfo

---

ZfLib.File

The File object contains the path of a file to be attached to the message before it is sent.

Groups

Operations
The `Delete` method removes the `File` object from the `Files` collection.

### Read/Write Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>FileName</code></td>
<td>The <code>FileName</code> property returns the path of the file to be attached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ZfLib.File.Delete

```vbnet
Sub Delete()
    The `Delete` method removes the `File` object from the `Files` collection.
End Sub
```

### ZfLib.File.FileName

```vbnet
Property FileName As String
    The `FileName` property returns the path of the file to be attached.
```

### ZfLib.Files

See Also:
- `Files`
- `NewMessage`
The Files collection object contains File objects. To attach Zetafax attachments to the message use the Attachments collection.

Groups

Operations

- **Add**
  - The Add method adds a File object to the collection.

Read-only Properties

- **Count**
  - The Count property returns the number of File items in the collection.
  - The Item property returns the specified File object.

See Also

File, Attachments

---

### ZLib.Files.Add

**Function Add(ByVal bszFile As String) As ZLib.File**

The Add method adds a File object to the collection.

**Parameters**

- **bszFile**
  - The path of the file to be added to the collection.

**Return Value**

This method returns the new File object.

**Remarks**

To reduce the possibility of errors, it is best to specify the full path when adding files to the collection.

See Also

File, NewMessage

---

### ZLib.Files.Count

**Property Count As Long**
The Count property returns the number of File items in the collection.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The number of items in the collection.

---

**ZfLib.Files.Item**

Property Item( ByVal var As Variant ) As ZfLib.File

The Item property returns the specified File object.

**Parameters**

- var

[in]

The index of the File object to retrieve from the collection.

**Return Value**

The File object retrieved from the collection.

---

**ZfLib.Inbox**

The Inbox object represents a user's Zetafax IN directory.

**Remarks**

This object is the same as the Outbox object except that it points to a different folder.

**Groups**

**Operations**

- **CheckNewMsgStatus** The CheckNewMsgStatus method checks whether the status of any of the messages in the current user's IN directory have changed.
- **GetMsg** The GetMsg method returns the Message object matching the specified message body name.
- **GetMsgList** The GetMsgList method returns a Messages collection containing all
the items in this directory

See Also
Outbox, Messages, Message

ZfLib.Inbox.CheckNewMsgStatus

Function CheckNewMsgStatus( ) As Boolean

The CheckNewMsgStatus method checks whether the status of any of the messages in the current user's IN directory have changed.

Return Value
Returns True if the status of any of the messages have changed

See Also
ZfAPI, UserSession, Outbox

ZfLib.Inbox.GetMsg

Function GetMsg( ByVal bszMsg As String ) As ZfLib.Message

The GetMsg method returns the Message object matching the specified message body name.

Parameters

bszMsg
The body name of the message to retrieve.

See Also
Messages, Message

ZfLib.Inbox.GetMsgList

Function GetMsgList( ) As ZfLib.Messages

The GetMsgList method returns a Messages collection containing all the items in this directory

Return Value
The Messages collection object retrieved from the user's IN directory.

See Also
Outbox, Messages

---

**ZfLib.Letterhead**

The Letterhead class represents a Zetafax letterhead.

**Groups**

Read-only Properties

Name

The Name property returns the name of the Letterhead.

---

**ZfLib.Letterhead.Name**

Property Name As String

The Name property returns the name of the Letterhead.

Return Value

[out, retval]

See Also
Letterheads

---

**ZfLib.Letterheads**

The Letterheads collection object contains Letterhead objects.

**Groups**

Read-only Properties
The `Count` property returns the number of `Letterhead` items in the collection.

The `Item` property returns a letterhead item from the collection.

See Also

`Letterhead`, `ServerInfo`

---

ZfLib.Letterheads.Count

Property Count As Long

The Count property returns the number of `Letterhead` items in the collection.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The number of letterhead items in the `Letterheads` collection

See Also

`ServerInfo`, `Letterhead`

---

ZfLib.Letterheads.Item

Property Item( ByVal var As Variant ) As ZfLib.Letterhead

The Item property returns a letterhead item from the collection.

Parameters

var

[in]

The index of the letterhead to retrieve from the collection.

Return Value

The `Letterhead` object retrieved from the Letterheads collection

Remarks

The `Letterheads` property needs to be called using the `ServerInfo` object to retrieve the update version version of the `Letterheads` collection.

See Also

`Letterhead`, `ServerInfo`
The Link object allows a user to retrieve information on the status of a link. It also provides statistics on the link's performance.

Groups
Read-only Properties

- **ConnectionOK**
  - The `ConnectionOK` property returns the current state of the connection to the Remote server.

- **LinkActive**
  - The `LinkActive` property returns the active status of the Link.

- **LocalStatus**
  - The `LocalStatus` property retrieves the current status of the link.

- **NumAcknowledged**
  - The `NumAcknowledged` property returns the number of messages that have been submitted to the Remote server and have been acknowledged.

- **NumDeviceError**
  - The `NumDeviceError` property returns the number of messages that failed to be sent as a result of device errors.

- **NumReceived**
  - The `NumReceived` property returns the number of messages that have been received from the Remote server for sending locally.

- **NumRejected**
  - The `NumRejected` property returns the number of messages rejected by the Remote server.

- **NumRemoteServerError**
  - The `NumRemoteServerError` property returns the number of messages that failed to be sent as a result of other errors at the Remote server.

- **NumSentOK**
  - The `NumSentOK` property returns the number of messages sent successfully by the Remote server.

- **NumTimedOut**
  - The `NumTimedOut` property returns the number of messages that timed out while waiting for a response over the link.

- **NumUnAcknowledged**
  - The `NumUnAcknowledged` property returns the number of messages that haven't been acknowledged.

- **RemoteServer**
  - The `RemoteServer` property returns the name of the Remote server to which the link is configured.

- **RemoteStatus**
  - The `RemoteStatus` property returns the current status of the remote server.
Property ConnectionOK As Boolean

The ConnectionOK property returns the current state of the connection to the Remote server.

Return Value

[out, retval]

This property returns the state of the connection. True if it is OK, False otherwise.

See Also

Links

Property LinkActive As Boolean

The LinkActive property returns the active status of the Link.

Return Value

[out, retval]

Returns True to indicate the link is active and available for sending and receiving, otherwise it returns False.

See Also

Links

Property LocalStatus As LinkStatusEnum

The LocalStatus property retrieves the current status of the link.
Return Value
[out, retval]
This is the current status of the link on the local server.

See Also
Links, LinkStatusEnum

**ZfLib.Link.NumAcknowledged**

Property NumAcknowledged As Short

The NumAcknowledged property returns the number of messages that have been submitted to the Remote server and have been acknowledged.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The number of messages submitted that have been acknowledged.

See Also
Links

**ZfLib.Link.NumDeviceError**

Property NumDeviceError As Short

The NumDeviceError property returns the number of messages that failed to be sent as a result of device errors.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The number of device errors that occurred on the Remote server

See Also
Links
ZfLib.Link.NumReceived

Property NumReceived As Short

The NumReceived property returns the number of messages that have been received from the Remote server for sending locally.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The number of messages received from the Remote server

See Also
Links

ZfLib.Link.NumRejected

Property NumRejected As Short

The NumRejected property returns the number of messages rejected by the Remote server.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The number of messages rejected by the Remote server.

See Also
Links

ZfLib.Link.NumRemoteServerError

Property NumRemoteServerError As Short

The NumRemoteServerError property returns the number of messages that failed to be sent as a result of other errors at the Remote server.

Return Value

[out, retval]
The number of Remote server errors on this link

See Also
Links

ZfLib.Link.NumSentOK

Property NumSentOK As Short
The NumSentOK property returns the number of messages sent successfully by the Remote server.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The number of messages sent successfully by the Remote server

See Also
Links

ZfLib.Link.NumTimedOut

Property NumTimedOut As Short
The NumTimedOut property returns the number of messages that timed out while waiting for a response over the link.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The number of messages timed out on the link

ZfLib.Link.NumUnAcknowledged

Property NumUnAcknowledged As Short
The NumUnAcknowledged property returns the number of messages that haven't been acknowledged.

Return Value
The number of messages awaiting acknowledgedment.

See Also
Links

---

**ZfLib.Link.RemoteServer**

**Property**

RemoteServer As String

The RemoteServer property returns the name of the Remote server to which the link is configured.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]
The name of the remote server

---

**ZfLib.Link.RemoteStatus**

**Property** RemoteStatus As LinkStatusEnum

The RemoteStatus property returns the current status of the remote server.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]
The current status of the Remote server

See Also
Links, LinkStatusEnum

---

**ZfLib.Links**

The Links collection contains Link objects.

Remarks
The collection, and the items in the collection, represent a snap-shot of the Links’ status. If you want to update the collection you need to get a new ServerInfo object from the Server object.

Objects cannot be added to or removed from this collection.

Groups

Read-only Properties

- **Count**
  The `Count` property returns the total number of Link items in the collection.

- **Item**
  The `Item` property returns the specified Link object.

See Also

- `Link`
- `ServerInfo`
- `Server`

---

**ZfLib.Links.Count**

Property `Count` As Long

The Count property returns the total number of Link items in the collection.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The number of Link items in the Links collection

See Also

- `Link`
- `ServerInfo`

---

**ZfLib.Links.Item**

Property `Item( ByVal var As Variant ) As ZfLib.Link`

The Item property returns the specified Link object.

**Parameters**

- **var**
  [in]
The index of the Link object to retrieve from the collection.

**Return Value**

The Link object retrieved from the Links collection.

**See Also**

Link, ServerInfo

---

**ZfLib.Message**

The Message object allows access to the details of sent and received messages.

**Remarks**

You can use this object to delay or rush messages that have not yet been sent.

To create a new message you have to use the NewMessage object returned by UserSession. CreateNewMsg.

**Groups**

**Operations**

- **AbortMsg**
  The AbortMsg method aborts the sending of a message.

- **DeleteMsg**
  The Delete method removes an entry of the message from the IN or OUT message information file.

- **GetMsgHistories**
  The GetMsgHistories method returns the MessageHistories collection containing the transmission history of the message.

- **GetMsgInfo**
  The GetMsgInfo method returns the MessageInfo object. This allows access to information about a message.

- **HoldMsg**
  The HoldMsg method holds the sending of the current message.

- **MarkMsgAsRead**
  The MarkMsgAsRead method changes the 'user status' of a message to 'OK'. This will make it appear as 'read' to client programs.

- **ReleaseMsg**
  The ReleaseMsg method releases a held message and places it in the message queue for sending.

- **RushMsg**
  The RushMsg method is used to rush a message for sending.

- **SendMsg**
  The SendMsg method places a message in the message queue for sending by the Zetafax server.

**See Also**

NewMessage
ZfLib.Message.AbortMsg

Sub AbortMsg()

The AbortMsg method aborts the sending of a message.

See Also
Messages

ZfLib.Message.DeleteMsg

Sub DeleteMsg(ByVal fDeleteFiles As Boolean)

The Delete method removes an entry of the message from the IN or OUT message information file.

Parameters

DeleteFiles

Boolean flag to delete associate data files if True.

Remarks

The Delete method removes the object from the collection. If you have another reference to the object it's properties and methods may return errors.

ZfLib.Message.GetMsgHistories

Function GetMsgHistories() As ZfLib.MessageHistories

The GetMsgHistories method returns the MessageHistories collection containing the transmission history of the message.

Return Value

The retrieved MessageHistories collection.

See Also
Messages
ZfLib.Message.GetMsgInfo

Function GetMsgInfo( ) As ZfLib.MessageInfo

The GetMsgInfo method returns the MessageInfo object. This allows access to information about a message.

Return Value

The retrieved MessageInfo object.

See Also
Messages

ZfLib.Message.HoldMsg

Sub HoldMsg( )

The HoldMsg method holds the sending of the current message.

See Also
Messages, Inbox

ZfLib.Message.MarkMsgAsRead

Sub MarkMsgAsRead( )

The MarkMsgAsRead method changes the 'user status' of a message to 'OK'. This will make it appear as 'read' to client programs.

See Also
Messages, Inbox

ZfLib.Message.ReleaseMsg
Sub ReleaseMsg( )

The ReleaseMsg method releases a held message and places it in the message queue for sending.

See Also
Messages, Inbox

Sub RushMsg( )

The RushMsg method is used to rush a message for sending.

See Also
Messages

Sub SendMsg( )

The SendMsg method places a message in the message queue for sending by the Zetafax server.

See Also
Messages, Inbox

The MsgHistories collection represents a message's transmission history and contains MessageHistory objects.

Remarks

The collection, and the items in the collection, represent a snap-shot of the message's history. If you want to update the collection you need to get a new MessageHistories object from it's parent Message object.

Objects cannot be added or removed from this collection.

Groups
Read-only Properties

**Count**
The **Count** method returns the number of MessageHistory items in the collection.

**Item**
The **Item** property returns a MessageHistory item from the collection.

**See Also**
MessageHistory, Message, MessageInfo

---

**ZfLib.MessageHistories.Count**

**Property** Count As Long

The Count method returns the number of MessageHistory items in the collection.

**Return Value**
[out, retval]
The number of MessageHistory items in the collection.

**See Also**
Message, MessageHistory

---

**ZfLib.MessageHistories.Item**

**Property** Item(ByVal var As Variant) As ZfLib.MessageHistory

The Item property returns a MessageHistory item from the collection.

**Parameters**

var

[in]
The MessageHistory item to retrieve from the MessageHistories collection.

**Return Value**
The MessageHistory object retrieved from the collection.

**See Also**
Message, MessageHistory
ZfLib.MessageHistory

The MessageHistory object contains an item in a message's transmission history.

Groups

Read-only Properties

- **AddrNum**: The AddrNum property returns addressee number starting from 1. This allows events to be matched to addressees when a single message has been sent to more than one person.
- **Connection**: The Connection property returns the connection time in seconds.
- **Date**: The Date property returns the transmission date of the message.
- **Device**: The Device property returns the name of the device used to send the message.
- **ErrorCode**: The ErrorCode property returns the reason an attempt to send a message failed.
- **Event**: The Event property returns the Event type of this MessageHistory object.
- **Name**: The Name property returns the name of the recipient associated with this MessageHistory event.
- **Organisation**: The Organisation property returns the organisation of the recipient associated with this MessageHistory event.
- **PagesSent**: The PagesSent property returns the last page successfully sent.
- **RemoteServer**: The RemoteServer property returns the name of the remote server used to send a message when the message was sent using LCR.
- **Route**: The Route property returns the route type used to send a message.
- **RouteParams**: The RouteParams property returns the route parameters used. For fax routes this is the fax number dialled.

ZfLib.MessageHistory.AddrNum

Property AddrNum As Short

The AddrNum property returns addressee number starting from 1. This allows events to be matched to
addressees when a single message has been sent to more than one person.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The addressee index.

**See Also**

Messages, MessageHistories

---

**ZfLib.MessageHistory.Connection**

Property **Connection As Short**

The Connection property returns the connection time in seconds.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The connection time in seconds

**See Also**

Messages, MessageHistories

---

**ZfLib.MessageHistory.Date**

Property **Date As Date**

The Date property returns the transmission date of the message.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The date the message was sent

**See Also**

Messages, MessageHistories
ZfLib.MessageHistory.Device

Property Device As String

The Device property returns the name of the device used to send the message.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The name of the device used

See Also
Messages, MessageHistories


Property ErrorCode As Long

The ErrorCode property returns the reason an attempt to send a message failed.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The returned Error code as a result of failure.

Remarks
Note that the values returned depend on the version of Zetafax Server running, not the version of API used. Newer version of the server will have additional error codes added.

See Also
ZfErr, Messages, MessageHistories

ZfLib.MessageHistory.Event

Property Event As EventEnum

The Event property returns the Event type of this MessageHistory object.
Return Value

[out, retval]

The retrieved EventEnum value.

See Also
Messages, Message, EventEnum

---

ZfLib.MessageHistory.Name

Property Name As String

The Name property returns the name of the recipient associated with this MessageHistory event

Return Value

[out, retval]

The name of the Remote server used

See Also
Messages, MessageHistories

---

ZfLib.MessageHistory.Organisation

Property Organisation As String

The Organisation property returns the organisation of the recipient associated with this MessageHistory event

Return Value

[out, retval]

The name of the Remote server used

See Also
Messages, MessageHistories
ZfLib.MessageHistory.PagesSent

Property PagesSent As Short

The PagesSent property returns the last page successfully sent.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The last page number sent

Remarks

If a three page message had several attempts at sending but only first two pages were sent successfully, this value would be set to 2.

See Also

Messages, MessageHistories


Property RemoteServer As String

The RemoteServer property returns the name of the remote server used to send a message when the message was sent using LCR.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The name of the Remote server used

See Also

Messages, MessageHistories

ZfLib.MessageHistory.Route

Property Route As RouteEnum

The Route property returns the route type used to send a message.
Return Value
[out, retval]
This is the route type used to send a message.

## ZfLib.MessageHistory.RouteParams

Property RouteParams As String

The RouteParams property returns the route parameters used. For fax routes this is the fax number dialled.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The route parameters used to send a message.

See Also
Messages, MessageHistories

## ZfLib.MessageInfo

The MessageInfo object contains information about a single Message object.

Groups
Read-only Properties

- **Body**
The Body property returns the body name of the message’s files.

- **Comment**
The Comment property returns the comment associated with the message.

- **CustomField**
The CustomField property returns the custom field data associated with the message.

- **ImageFilePath**

- **ImageSize**

- **ImageStream**

- **Organisation**
The Organisation property returns the organisation of the first recipient to which this fax was sent. It is therefore only used in the Out directory.

- **Status**
The Status property returns the status of a message.

- **Subject**
The Subject property returns the subject of the
**Type**
The `Type` property returns the type of message you are looking at.

**UserStatus**
The `UserStatus` property returns the 'user status' of a message.

**See Also**
Message, MessageHistory

---

**ZfLib.MessageInfo.Attachments**

Property `Attachments` As `ZLib.Attachments`
This property retrieves the Attachments collection.

**Return Value**
[out, retval]
The retrieved Attachments collection

**Remarks**
If `ZLib.Attachments.Count` returns 0 there are no attachments associated with the fax.

---

**ZfLib.MessageInfo.Body**

Property `Body` As String
The `Body` property returns the body name of the message's files.

**Return Value**
[out, retval]
The message body name

**See Also**
Messages, Message
ZfLib.MessageInfo.Comment

Property Comment As String

The Comment property returns the comment associated with the message.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The Comment line of a message

ZfLib.MessageInfo.CoverText

Property CoverText As String

The CoverText property returns the covertext of the message.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The covertext of a message

ZfLib.MessageInfo.CustomField

Property CustomField As String

The CustomField property returns the custom field data associated with the message.

ZfLib.MessageInfo.Files
Property Files As ZLib.Files

This property retrieves the Files collection

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The retrieved Files collection

**Remarks**

If ZLib.Files.Count returns 0 no files were attached to the fax.

---

ZLib.MessageInfo.ImageFilePath

Property ImageFilePath As String

ZLib.MessageInfo.ImageSize

Property ImageSize As Long

ZLib.MessageInfo.ImageStream

Property ImageStream As IStream

ZLib.MessageInfo.Organisation

Property Organisation As String

The Organisation property returns the organisation of the first recipient to which this fax was sent. It is therefore only used in the Out directory.
Return Value

[out, retval]

The name of the Organisation to which this message was sent

---

**ZfLib.MessageInfo.Status**

Property Status As `StatusEnum`

The Status property returns the status of a message.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The status of a message.

---

**ZfLib.MessageInfo.Subject**

Property Subject As String

The Subject property returns the subject of the message.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The Subject line of a message

See Also

Messages, Message

---

**ZfLib.MessageInfo.Type**

Property Type As `FaxTypeEnum`

The Type property returns the type of message you are looking at.
Return Value
[out, retval]
The type of message at which you are looking

Remarks
Note: This field defaults to type zfFaxTypeFax.

See Also
FaxTypeEnum, Message

ZfLib.MessageInfo.UserStatus

Property UserStatus As UserStatusEnum
The UserStatus property returns the 'user status' of a message.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The 'user status' of a message.

Remarks
The 'user status' refers to the user's awareness of the message rather than the actual 'status' of the message ('read' or 'unread' rather than 'OK' or 'Failed').

ZfLib.Messages
The Messages collection contains Message objects from either a User's Inbox or Outbox.

Remarks
You do not add objects to the collection directly. To add an item to the Inbox you must send a fax, and add an item in the Outbox you must receive a fax.

This collection can contain thousands of objects.

Groups
Read-only Properties

Count
The Count property returns the number of Message items in the collection.

Item
The Item method retrieves a Message item from the collection.
The `MsgDir` property returns the full path of the directory which holds the messages in this collection.

---

**ZfLib.Messages.Count**

Property Count As Long

The Count property returns the number of `Message` items in the collection.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The number of Message items in the Messages collection.

**See Also**

Inbox, Outbox

---

**ZfLib.Messages.Item**

Property Item( ByVal var As Variant ) As ZfLib.Message

The Item method retrieves a Message item from the collection.

**Parameters**

var

[in]

The index of the Message object we wish to retrieve from the collection

**Return Value**

The Message object retrieved from the Messages collection

**See Also**

Inbox, Outbox
Property MsgDir As String

The MsgDir property returns the full path of the directory which holds the messages in this collection.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The retrieved message directory

**See Also**

Inbox, Outbox, Messages

---

**ZfLib.NewMessage**

The NewMessage object allows the logged on user to prepare and submit a new message to the Zetafax server for sending.

**Remarks**

At least one Recipient must be configured before sending.

The message is sent using a submit file.

**Groups**

**Operations**

- **Send**
  
The Send method submits the prepared message to the Zetafax server for sending.

**Read-only Properties**

- **Attachments**
  
This property retrieves the Attachments collection used to add Zetafax attachments to the new message.

- **Body**
  
After a message has been sent successfully this property contains the message body name. This is useful when you wish to keep track of the message in the Outbox.

- **Files**
  
This property retrieves the Files collection.

- **Recipients**
  
This property retrieves the Recipients collection.
#Read/Write Properties

- **After**
The `After` property specifies the time and date after which the message is to be sent.

- **Charge**
The `Charge` property specifies the billing code to use for a message.

- **Comment**
The `Comment` property specifies the message description usually displayed on the right of the Zetafax client OUT window.

- **CoverSheet**
The `CoverSheet` property specifies the Coversheet to be added to the new message.

- **CoverText**
The `CoverText` property specifies the text to be added to the selected coversheet.

- **Delete**
The `Delete` property specifies whether the server should delete the message from the OUT folder after it has been sent.

- **Format**
This property specifies the file format of the data file to be sent.

- **From**
The `From` property specifies the name that is put on the message Coversheet as the sender of the message.

- **Header**
The `Header` property specifies the format of the Header line to appear at the top of each page of the message.

- **Hold**
The `Hold` property specifies whether the message will be held once it is in the queue, i.e. it will not be sent until the user releases it.

- **Letterhead**
The `Letterhead` property specifies a file (Letterhead) on which to merge the message before sending.

- **Preview**
The `Preview` property specifies whether a preview file is to be prepared for the message.

- **Priority**
This property specifies priority of the message.

- **Quality**
The `Quality` property specifies the resolution to be used when sending the message.

- **SendTime**
The `SendTime` property specifies when the message should be sent.

- **Subject**
The `Subject` property specifies a message Subject line, which is displayed on the coversheet in the Zetafax Client's out window.

- **Text**
The `Text` property specifies the Text of the new message.

- **User**
The `User` property specifies the Zetafax user submitting the message.

- **CustomField**
The Custom Field property allows users of the API to specify their own custom data.
**ZfLib.NewMessage.After**

Property After As Date

The After property specifies the time and date after which the message is to be sent.

**Parameters**

after

[in]

The date and time to send a message.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The date and time to send the new message.

**Remarks**

This field is only used when the SendTime property is set to zfSendTimeAfter.

See Also

SendTime

---

**ZfLib.NewMessage.Attachments**

Property Attachments As ZfLib.Attachments

This property retrieves the Attachments collection used to add Zetafax attachments to the new message.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The retrieved Attachments collection.

**Remarks**

A new message does not need to contain any attachments.

See Also
Property Body As String

After a message has been sent successfully this property contains the message body name. This is useful when you wish to keep track of the message in the Outbox.

Return Value

[out, retval]
The retrieved message body.

See Also
Outbox.GetMsg

Property Charge As String

The Charge property specifies the billing code to use for a message.

Parameters

strCharge

[in]

Return Value

[out, retval]
The charge code used for a message.

Remarks

The charge codes are stored in the billing log when the fax completes, and may be used for charging the fax to a particular department/client.
ZfLib.NewMessage.Comment

Property Comment As String

The Comment property specifies the message description usually displayed on the right of the Zetafax client OUT window.

Parameters

strComment
[in]

Return Value

[out, retval]
The retrieved Comment line of the message.

Remarks

If the Comment line is omitted a message description detailing the first addressee is used.

ZfLib.NewMessage.CoverSheet

Property CoverSheet As String

The CoverSheet property specifies the Coversheet to be added to the new message.

Parameters

strCoverSheet
[in]

Return Value

[out, retval]
The CoverSheet used with the message.

Remarks

To specify the coversheet use the name by which it is known in Zetafax, not it's file name.
ZfLib.NewMessage.Covertext

**Property Covertext As String**

The Covertext property specifies the text to be added to the selected coversheet.

**Parameters**

- **strCovertext**
  - **[in]**

**Return Value**

- **[out, retval]**
  - The Covertext to be inserted onto the coversheet.

**See Also**

CoverSheet

ZfLib.NewMessage.CustomField

**Property CustomField As String**

The Custom Field property allows users of the API to specify their own custom data.

ZfLib.NewMessage.Delete

**Property Delete As Boolean**

The Delete property specifies whether the server should delete the message from the OUT folder after it has been sent.

**Parameters**

- **Delete**
  - **[in]**
Return Value
[out, retval]
The retrieved Delete flag.

ZfLib.NewMessage.Files

Property Files As ZfLib.Files
This property retrieves the Files collection.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The retrieved Files collection.

Remarks
A new message does not need to contain any files.

See Also
File, NewMessage, Attachments

ZfLib.NewMessage.Format

Property Format As FormatEnum
This property specifies the file format of the data file to be sent.

Parameters

format
[in]
The Format type to use for this message

Return Value
[out, retval]

Remarks
In a standard submit file the format should be "ASCII" or "EPSON". Epson should be used if the message text contains any %% formatting commands, for
**ZfLib.NewMessage.From**

**Property From As String**

The `From` property specifies the name that is put on the message Coversheet as the sender of the message.

**Parameters**

- `strFrom`
  - [in]

**Return Value**

- [out, retval]
  - The current `From` line of the new message

---

**ZfLib.NewMessage.Header**

**Property Header As HeaderEnum**

The `Header` property specifies the format of the Header line to appear at the top of each page of the message.

**Parameters**

- `header`
  - [in]

**Return Value**

- [out, retval]
  - The current `Header` type of this message
Remarks
Specify more than one field OR the values together as for example:
zfHeaderNumber Or zfHeaderTo

See Also
HeaderEnum

---

ZfLib.NewMessage.Hold

Property Hold As Boolean

The Hold property specifies whether the message will be held once it is in the queue, i.e. it will not be sent until the user releases it.

Parameters

fHold

[in]

Whether we want to hold this message.

Return Value

[out, retval]

Whether this message is to be held.

See Also

Message.Hold, Message.Release

---

ZfLib.NewMessage.Letterhead

Property

Letterhead As String

The Letterhead property specifies a file (Letterhead) on which to merge the message before sending.

Parameters

strLetterhead

[in]

Return Value
The current Letterhead to be used for this message.

Remarks
To specify the letterhead use the name by which it is known in Zetafax, not it's file name.

Property Preview As Boolean

The Preview property specifies whether a preview file is to be prepared for the message.

Return Value
[外, retval]

Whether we currently want a message preview.

Property Priority As PriorityEnum

This property specifies priority of the message.

Parameters

priority
[in]

This is the new Priority of the message

Return Value
[外, retval]

The current Priority of the message

See Also
NewMessage, PriorityEnum
**ZfLib.NewMessage.Quality**

Property Quality As **QualityEnum**

The Quality property specifies the resolution to be used when sending the message.

**Parameters**

- quality
  
  [in]
  
  The new resolution with which to send this message

**Return Value**

- [out, retval]
  
  The current resolution the message

**See Also**

NewMessage, QualityEnum

---

**ZfLib.NewMessage.Recipients**

Property Recipients As **ZfLib.Recipients**

This property retrieves the Recipients collection.

**Return Value**

- [out, retval]
  
  The retrieved Recipients collection.

**Remarks**

The recipients object must contain one or more recipients otherwise the sending of the message will fail.

**See Also**

NewMessage, Recipient
Sub Send()
    The Send method submits the prepared message to the Zetafax server for sending.

Remarks
At least one recipient should be specified for this method to succeed.

Property SendTime As SendTimeEnum
    The SendTime property specifies when the message should be sent.

Parameters
sendTime
    [in]
    The new SendTime of the message.

Return Value
    [out, retval]
    The current SendTime of the message.

Remarks
If SendTime is set to zfSendTimeAfter then you need to specify the time to send using the After property.

See Also
After

Property Subject As String
    The Subject property specifies a message Subject line, which is displayed on the coversheet an in the
Zetafax Client's out window.

Parameters

- `strSubject` [in]

Return Value

- [out, retval]

  The retrieved Subject line this message

Remarks

  The maximum subject field is 60 characters long.

---

ZfLib.NewMessage.Text

Property `Text` As String

The Text property specifies the Text of the new message.

Parameters

- `strText` [in]

Return Value

- [out, retval]

  The retrieved body text of the new message.

---

ZfLib.NewMessage.User

Property `User` As String

The User property specifies the Zetafax user submitting the message.

Parameters

- `strUser`
ZLib.Outbox

The Outbox object represents a user’s Zetafax OUT directory.

Remarks
This object is the same as the Inbox object except that it points to a different folder.

Groups
Operations

- **CheckNewMsgStatus**: The `CheckNewMsgStatus` method checks whether the status of any of the messages in the current user’s OUT directory have changed.
- **GetMsg**: The `GetMsg` method returns the Message object matching the specified message body name.
- **GetMsgList**: The `GetMsgList` method returns a Messages collection containing all the items in this directory.

See Also
Inbox, Messages, Message

ZLib.Outbox.CheckNewMsgStatus

Function `CheckNewMsgStatus( ) As Boolean`

The `CheckNewMsgStatus` method checks whether the status of any of the messages in the current user’s OUT directory have changed.

Return Value

Returns True if there are new messages or a message’s status has changed

See Also
ZfAPI, UserSession, Inbox
Function GetMsg( ByVal bszMsg As String ) As ZfLib.Message

The GetMsg method returns the Message object matching the specified message body name.

**Parameters**

bszMsg

The body name of the message to retrieve

**See Also**

Messages, Message

---

Function GetMsgList( ) As ZfLib.Messages

The GetMsgList method returns a Messages collection containing all the items in this directory

**Return Value**

The retrieved Messages object.

**See Also**

Inbox, Messages

---

The Recipient object contains address details of an addressee for whom a message is intended.

**Remarks**

Both the To and Fax properties need to be specified prior to sending a message.

If you use Recipients various Add methods you will not need to access this object directly.
**Groups**

**Operations**

- **Delete**

  The **Delete** method removes this recipient from the **Recipients** collection.

**Read/Write Properties**

- **Fax**
  
  The **Fax** property retrieves the **Fax** number of the recipient of a message.

- **Organisation**
  
  This property specifies the organisation to which the recipient belongs.

- **To**
  
  This property specifies the recipient's name.

- **Type**
  
  The **Type** property specifies how the message will be sent to the recipient.

See Also

- [NewMessage](#), [Recipients.AddFaxRecipient](#), [Recipients.AddLANRecipient](#)

---

**ZfLib.Recipient.Delete**

Sub Delete()

The Delete method removes this recipient from the Recipients collection.

See Also

- [Recipients](#), [NewMessage](#)

---

**ZfLib.Recipient.Fax**

Property Fax As String

The Fax property retrieves the Fax number of the recipient of a message.

**Parameters**

- **strFax**
  
  [in]
This is the new Fax number of the recipient.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The current Fax number of the recipient.

Remarks
This field could perhaps be better described as the address. If we were sending a LAN type address then the Fax property would actually contain the Zetafax user name of the person being sent the fax.

See Also
Recipients

---

**ZfLib.Recipient.Organisation**

Property Organisation As String
This property specifies the organisation to which the recipient belongs.

Parameters

- **strOrganisation**
  [in]
The new Organistaion name of the recipient.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The current organisation name.

---

**ZfLib.Recipient.To**

Property To As String
This property specifies the recipient's name.

Parameters

- **strRecipient**
  [in]
The name of the recipient of the new message.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The current name of the recipient.

---

**ZfLib.Recipient.Type**

Property Type As `FaxTypeEnum`

The `Type` property specifies how the message will be sent to the recipient.

**Parameters**

- `faxType`  
  [in]

The new way the message will be sent.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The current way the message will be sent.

**See Also**

- `Recipients`
- `FaxTypeEnum`

---

**ZfLib.Recipients**

The `Recipients` collection object contains `Recipient` objects.

**Remarks**

This collection cannot exceed 30 objects.

New objects are added using the various `AddRecipient` methods which create a properly configured `Recipient` object. This means you will rarely have to access a recipient object directly.

**Groups**

Operations
The **AddFaxRecipient** method adds a Fax Recipient item to the collection.

The **AddLANRecipient** method adds a LAN Recipient item to the collection.

The **AddSMSRecipient** method adds an SMS Recipient item to the collection.

### Read-only Properties

- **Count**
  - The Count method returns the number of Recipient items in the collection.

- **Item**
  - The Item property retrieves a Recipient item from the collection.

### See Also

- **Recipient**

---

**ZfLib.Recipients.AddFaxRecipient**

Function AddFaxRecipient( ByVal bszTo As String, ByVal bszOrganisation As String, ByVal bszFax As String ) As ZfLib.Recipient

The AddFaxRecipient method adds a Fax Recipient item to the collection.

**Parameters**

- **bszTo**
  - The name of the recipient.

- **bszOrganisation**
  - The name of the organisation to which the recipient belongs.

- **bszFax**
  - The recipient's Fax Number.

**Return Value**

The new **Recipient** object.

**See Also**

- **NewMessage**, **FaxTypeEnum**
ZfLib.Recipients.AddLANRecipient

Function AddLANRecipient( ByVal bszTo As String, ByVal bszOrganisation As String, ByVal bszUser As String ) As ZfLib.Recipient

The AddLANRecipient method adds a LAN Recipient item to the collection.

Parameters

- `bszTo` The name of the recipient.
- `bszOrganisation` The name of the organisation which the recipient belongs.
- `bszUser` The LAN Address of the recipient.

Return Value

The new `Recipient` object.

See Also

NewMessage, Recipients.AddFaxRecipient, FaxTypeEnum

ZfLib.Recipients.AddSMSRecipient

Function AddSMSRecipient( ByVal bszTo As String, ByVal bszOrganisation As String, ByVal bszSMS As String ) As ZfLib.Recipient

The AddSMSRecipient method adds an SMS `Recipient` item to the collection.

Parameters

- `bszTo` The name of the `Recipient`.
- `bszOrganisation` The organisation to which the recipient belongs.
- `bszSMS` The SMS number of the recipient.

Return Value

The new `Recipient` object.
ZfLib.Recipients.Count

Property Count As Long

The Count method returns the number of Recipient items in the collection.

Return Value
[out, retval]

The number of items in the Recipients collection

ZfLib.Recipients.Item

Property Item( ByVal var As Variant ) As ZfLib.Recipient

The Item property retrieves a Recipient item from the collection.

Parameters

var

[in]

The index of the item to retrieve from the collection.

Return Value

The Recipient object retrieved from the Recipients collection.

ZfLib.Server

The Server object allows control over the Zetafax server, and access to objects describing the server's state.

Groups
Operations

**Check**
This is a method to check if the Zetafax server is running.

**GetServerInfo**
The `GetServerInfo` method returns the `ServerInfo` object which contains information about the state of the Zetafax server.

**Restart**
This method restarts the Zetafax Server.

**Start**
This method starts the Zetafax Server if it is stopped.

**Stop**
This method stops the Zetafax Server if it is running.

See Also
ServerInfo

---

**ZfLib.Server.Check**

Function `Check( ) As Boolean`

This is a method to check if the Zetafax server is running.

**Return Value**
If the server is running this method returns True.

---

**ZfLib.Server.GetServerInfo**

Function `GetServerInfo( ) As ZfLib.ServerInfo`

The `GetServerInfo` method returns the `ServerInfo` object which contains information about the state of the Zetafax server.

**Return Value**
This method returns the `ServerInfo` object.

---

**ZfLib.Server.Restart**
Sub Restart()
This method restarts the Zetafax Server.

ZfLib.Server.Start

Sub Start()
This method starts the Zetafax Server if it is stopped.

ZfLib.Server.Stop

Sub Stop()
This method stops the Zetafax Server if it is running.

ZfLib.ServerInfo

The ServerInfo object exposes the status and configuration of the Zetafax server.

Groups

Read-only Properties

- **Coversheets**
  The Coversheets property returns a Coversheets collection with information about the Coversheets on the Zetafax server.

- **Deferred**
  The deferred property retrieves the number of items in the queue that have been deferred.

- **Devices**
  The Devices property returns a Devices collection detailing the current state of the Zetafax server's devices.

- **Letterheads**
  The Letterheads property returns a Letterheads collection with information about the Letterheads on the Zetafax server.

- **Links**
  The Links property returns a Links collection with information about the
The current state of the LCR links maintained by the Zetafax server.

- **MaxDevices**: The `MaxDevices` property retrieves the maximum number of devices the Zetafax server supports.

- **MaxLinks**: The `MaxLinks` property retrieves the maximum number of LCR links the Zetafax server supports.

- **RemoteAccept**: The `RemoteAccept` property retrieves the number of message items currently accepted for sending by remote servers.

- **RouterSub**: The `RouterSub` property retrieves the number of items submitted to the Router for sending and awaiting acceptance by a remote server.

- **Scanning**: The `Scanning` property retrieves the number of items in the queue being processed by a scanning device.

- **Sending**: The `Sending` property returns the number of items in the queue which are currently being sent.

- **WaitingConvert**: The `WaitingConvert` property retrieves the number of items in the queue waiting to be converted or being prepared for sending.

- **WaitingDevice**: The `WaitingDevice` property retrieves the number of items waiting for a device to become available.

- **WaitingResend**: The `WaitingResend` property retrieves the number of items in the queue waiting before retrying after a send attempt failed.

---

**ZfLib.ServerInfo.Coversheets**

Property `Coversheets` As `ZfLib.Coversheets`

The `Coversheets` property returns a `Coversheets` collection with information about the Coversheets on the Zetafax server.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The `Coversheets` collection.

**See Also**

- `Coversheets`
- `Coversheet`
ZfLib.ServerInfo.Deferred

Property Deferred As Short

The deferred property retrieves the number of items in the queue that have been deferred.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The number of deferred message items.

ZfLib.ServerInfo.Devices

Property Devices As ZfLib.Devices

The Devices property returns a Devices collection detailing the current state of the Zetafax server's devices.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The Devices collection.

See Also

Devices

ZfLib.ServerInfo.Letterheads

Property Letterheads As ZfLib.Letterheads

The Letterheads property returns a Letterheads collection with information about the Letterheads on the Zetafax server.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The Letterheads collection.
See Also
Letterheads, Letterhead

---

**ZfLib.ServerInfo.Links**

Property Links As ZfLib.Links

The Links property returns a Links collection with information about the current state of the LCR links maintained by the Zetafax server.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The Links collection.

See Also
Links

---

**ZfLib.ServerInfo.MaxDevices**

Property MaxDevices As Short

The MaxDevices property retrieves the maximum number of devices the Zetafax server supports.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The maximum number of devices allowed

**Remarks**

This property always returns 100.

---

**ZfLib.ServerInfo.MaxLinks**

Property MaxLinks As Short

The MaxLinks property retrieves the maximum number of LCR links the Zetafax server supports.

**Return Value**
The maximum number of Remote Server links allowed

ZfLib.ServerInfo.RemoteAccept

Property RemoteAccept As Short
The RemoteAccept property retrieves the number of message items currently accepted for sending by remote servers.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The number of items accepted by remote server.

ZfLib.ServerInfo.RouterSub

Property RouterSub As Short
The RouterSub property retrieves the number of items submitted to the Router for sending and awaiting acceptance by a remote server.

Return Value
[out, retval]
This is the number of items submitted to Router

ZfLib.ServerInfo.Scanning

Property Scanning As Short
The Scanning property retrieves the number of items in the queue being processed by a scanning device.

Return Value
The numbers of scan request items in queue.

ZfLib.ServerInfo.Sending

Property Sending As Short

The Sending property returns the number of items in the queue which are currently being sent.

Return Value

[out, retval]
The number of message items in the queue being sent.

ZfLib.ServerInfo.WaitingConvert

Property WaitingConvert As Short

The WaitingConvert property retrieves the number of items in the queue waiting to be converted or being prepared for sending.

Return Value

[out, retval]
This is the number of items waiting to be converted.

ZfLib.ServerInfo.WaitingDevice

Property WaitingDevice As Short

The WaitingDevice property retrieves the number of items waiting for a device to become available.

Return Value

[out, retval]
The number of items awaiting device.
**ZLib.ServerInfo.WaitingResend**

Property WaitingResend As Short

The WaitingResend property retrieves the number of items in the queue waiting before retrying after a send attempt failed.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The number of message items awaiting resend.

**ZLib.UserSession**

The UserSession object contains details about a Zetafax user’s configuration, messages and gives you the ability to create new messages for sending.

**Groups**

**Operations**

- **CreateNewMsg**
  The CreateNewMsg method creates a NewMessage object.

- **Logoff**
  Logs of the user logged on in ZfAPI.Logon

- **SendSubmitFile**
  This method interprets the given SUBMIT format file, creating a CONTROL file and a DATA file in ASCII text or EPSON print format. It then submits these files for sending.

**Read-only Properties**

- **APIPrint**
  The APIPrint property returns the APIPrint object

- **Coversheet**
  The Coversheet property returns the user’s default Coversheet.

- **FromName**
  The FromName property specifies the name of the logged on user as it appears in the from field of new messages.

- **Inbox**
  The Inbox property returns the Inbox object.

- **Outbox**
  The Outbox property returns the Outbox object
The **Server** property returns the **Server** object.

The **SystemArea** property returns the Zetafax System directory.

The **UserArea** property returns path to the logged on Zetafax user's directory.

The **UserInDir** property returns the User's IN directory.

The **UserOutDir** property returns the User's OUT directory.

**See Also**

NewMessage, Inbox, Outbox

---

**ZfLib.UserSession.APIPrint**

Property **APIPrint** As **ZfLib.APIPrint**

The APIPrint property returns the APIPrint object

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

An APIPrint object.

**See Also**

APIPrint

---

**ZfLib.UserSession.Coversheet**

Property **Coversheet** As **String**

The Coversheet property returns the user's default Coversheet.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The user's default Coversheet.
ZfLib.UserSession.CreateNewMsg

Function CreateNewMsg( ) As ZfLib.NewMessage

The CreateNewMsg method creates a NewMessage object.

Return Value

The new NewMessage object.

See Also

NewMessage

ZfLib.UserSession.FromName

Property FromName As String

The FromName property specifies the name of the logged on user as it appears in the from field of new messages.

Return Value

[out, retval]

The user's FromName.

ZfLib.UserSession.Inbox

Property Inbox As ZfLib.Inbox

The Inbox property returns the Inbox object.

Return Value

[out, retval]

An Inbox object.

See Also

Inbox
Sub Logoff()
  Logs of the user logged on in ZfAPI.Logon

Remarks
Note: This function will also be called during the object's destruction. It is primarily intended for occasions when you don't know when the object will be released.

Property Outbox As ZfLib.Outbox

The Outbox property returns the Outbox object

Return Value
[out, retval]
A Outbox object.

See Also
Outbox

Function SendSubmitFile( ByVal bszSubFile As String, ByVal bszPrefix As String ) As String

This method interpretes the given SUBMIT format file, creating a CONTROL file and a DATA file in ASCII text or EPSON print format. It then submits these files for sending.

Parameters
- bszSubFile
  The name of the submit file
- bszPrefix
  Prefix to use when creating control and data files
Return Value
The name of message body if successfully submitted.

See Also
NewMessage

ZfLib.UserSession.Server
Property Server As ZfLib.Server
The Server property returns the Server object.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The Server object.

See Also
Server

ZfLib.UserSession.SystemArea
Property SystemArea As String
The SystemArea property returns the Zetafax System directory.

Return Value
[out, retval]
The path of the Zetafax system directory.

ZfLib.UserSession.UserArea
Property UserArea As String
The UserArea property returns path to the logged on Zetafax user's directory.
**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The path to the User's area

---

**ZfLib.UserSession.UserInDir**

Property UserInDir As String

The UserInDir property returns the User's IN directory.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The path of the User's IN directory.

---

**ZfLib.UserSession.UserOutDir**

Property UserOutDir As String

The UserOutDir property returns the User's OUT directory.

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The path to the User's OUT directory.

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI**

The ZfAPI object is the Application object of the COM version of the API, and is the only object that can be created directly. You must create this object and logon before you can access any of the other objects.

Groups

Operations
**GetZetafaxServerInfoFromAD**

Gets Zetafax directories configured for the specified Zetafax server.

**GetZetafaxServersFromAD**

Returns a list of Zetafax servers registered in Active Directory.

**Logon**

The **Logon** method logs on a user and returns the UserSession object.

**LogonAnonymous**

The **LogonAnonymous** method returns a limited UserSession object that is not logged on as a specific user.

**SetZetafaxDirs**

Explicitly state the locations of the Zetafax directories instead of letting the API read zfclient.ini.

**SetZetafaxServerFromAD**

Explicitly state the Zetafax server to use instead of letting the API read zfclient.ini.

---

**Read-only Properties**

- **RequestDir**
  
  Gets the path to the Request directory set by **SetZetafaxDirs** or **SetZetafaxServerFromAD**.

- **ServerDir**
  
  Gets the path to the Server directory set by **SetZetafaxDirs** or **SetZetafaxServerFromAD**.

- **SystemDir**
  
  Gets the path to the System directory set by **SetZetafaxDirs** or **SetZetafaxServerFromAD**.

- **UsersDir**
  
  Gets the path to the Users directory set by **SetZetafaxDirs** or **SetZetafaxServerFromAD**.

- **Version**
  
  The **Version** property returns the current version of ZfLib library.

- **ZetafaxServer**
  
  Gets the server set by **SetZetafaxServerFromAD**.

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServerInfoFromAD**

Sub GetZetafaxServerInfoFromAD( ByVal bszServerName As String, ByRef pbszServerDir As String, ByRef pbszSystemDir As String, ByRef pbszUsersDir As String, ByRef pbszRequestDir As String )

Gets Zetafax directories configured for the specified Zetafax server.

**Parameters**

- **bszServerName**
  
  The server name to look up in AD

- **pbszServerDir**
  
  The returned Server directory

- **pbszSystemDir**
  
  The returned System directory

- **pbszUsersDir**
  
  The returned Users directory
The returned Request directory

**Return Value**

If the directories have not been set by the Share Wizard, the method will return `zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_MISSING_VALUE`.

**Remarks**

This method queries Active Directory for the Zetafax server specified by `bszServerName`, and gets the directories that have been configured for the server by the Share Wizard.

See Also: `ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServersFromAD`

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServersFromAD**

Function `GetZetafaxServersFromAD() As Variant`

Returns a list of Zetafax servers registered in Active Directory.

**Return Value**

The returned server list

**Remarks**

This method queries Active Directory for installed Zetafax servers. It searches the Global Catalog if available, so will find any Zetafax servers installed in the forest.

See Also: `ZfAPI.SetZetafaxDirs`, `ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServerInfoFromAD`

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI.Logon**

Function `Logon(ByVal bszUserName As String, ByVal fExclusive As Boolean) As ZfLib.UserSession`

The Logon method logs on a user and returns the `UserSession` object.

**Parameters**

- `bszUserName` The Zetafax User account
- `fExclusive`
Exclusive Logon flag

**Return Value**

The returned [UserSession](#) object

Remarks

A successful call to this method is required to retrieve a [UserSession](#) object which allows access to all the other objects in ZfLib library. The method may be called more than once by the program if it wishes to logon more than one user. The `fExclusive` Boolean flag is set to FALSE if the specified user is permitted to be logged on elsewhere (either on a normal Zetafax client, or in another API program).

See Also

ZfAPI.LogonAnonymous, [UserSession](#), [UserSession.Logoff](#)

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI.LogonAnonymous**

Function LogonAnonymous() As ZfLib.UserSession

The LogonAnonymous method returns a limited UserSession object that is not logged on as a specific user.

**Return Value**

The returned UserSession object

Remarks

An anonymous session is restricted to the following methods in the UserSession object:
- [UserSession.Server](#)
- [UserSession.SystemArea](#)
- [UserSession.Logoff](#)

All other methods return an error.

See Also

ZfAPI.Logon, [UserSession](#), [UserSession.Logoff](#)

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI.RequestDir**

Property RequestDir As String

Gets the path to the Request directory set by [SetZetafaxDirs](#) or [SetZetafaxServerFromAD](#).

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The returned Request directory
Property ServerDir As String

Gets the path to the Server directory set by SetZetafaxDirs or SetZetafaxServerFromAD.

Return Value

[out, retval]
The returned Server directory

Sub SetZetafaxDirs(ByVal bszServerDir As String, ByVal bszSystemDir As String, ByVal bszUsersDir As String, ByVal bszRequestDir As String)

Explicitly state the locations of the Zetafax directories instead of letting the API read zfclient.ini.

Return Value

Returns E_FAIL if a session has already been created on this object.

Remarks

The API normally requires the Zetafax client to be installed and uses the zfclient.ini file to find the Zetafax server. In some cases the client may not be used so this method allows the caller to specify the location of the Zetafax server.

See Also

ZfAPI.SetZetafaxServerFromAD

Sub SetZetafaxServerFromAD(ByVal bszServerName As String)

Explicitly state the Zetafax server to use instead of letting the API read zfclient.ini.

Parameters

bszServerName
Name of Zetafax server machine

**Return Value**

Returns E_FAIL if a session has already been created on this object.

**Remarks**

The API normally requires the Zetafax client to be installed and uses the zfclient.ini file to find the Zetafax server. In some cases the client may not be used so this method allows the caller to specify the Zetafax server. This method looks up the Zetafax server in Active Directory, and sets the Zetafax server directories on this object.

**See Also**

ZfAPI.SetZetafaxDirs

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI.SystemDir**

Property `SystemDir` As String

Gets the path to the System directory set by [SetZetafaxDirs](https://example.com) or [SetZetafaxServerFromAD](https://example.com).

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The returned System directory

---

**ZfLib.ZfAPI.UsersDir**

Property `UsersDir` As String

Gets the path to the Users directory set by [SetZetafaxDirs](https://example.com) or [SetZetafaxServerFromAD](https://example.com).

**Return Value**

[out, retval]

The returned Users directory

---

© 2012 Equisys plc
Property Version As String

The Version property returns the current version of ZLib library

Return Value
[out, retval]
The current ZLib Version.

Remarks
API version

Property ZetafaxServer As String

Gets the server set by SetZetafaxServerFromAD

Return Value
[out, retval]
Returned server name

Remarks
Gets the server set by SetZetafaxServerFromAD

This is a list of the objects and enumerations that appear in the Zetafax COM library

Groups

COM Classes

API Print

This object allows the API to print via the Zetafax Printer.
The Attachment object contains the name of a Zetafax attachment to be attached to a message before it is sent.

The Attachments collection object contains Attachment objects.

The Coversheet class represents a Zetafax coversheet.

The Coversheets collection object contains Coversheet objects.

The Device object contains the configuration information and status of a device attached to the Zetafax server.

The Devices collection contains Device objects.

The File object contains the path of a file to be attached to the message before it is sent.

The Files collection object contains File objects. To attach Zetafax attachments to the message use the Attachments collection.

The Inbox object represents a user's Zetafax IN directory.

The Letterhead class represents a Zetafax letterhead.

The Letterheads collection object contains Letterhead objects.

The Link object allows a user to retrieve information on the status of a link. It also provides statistics on the Link's performance.

The Links collection contains Link objects.

The Message object allows access to the details of sent and received messages.

The MessageHistories collection represents a message's transmission history and contains MessageHistory objects.

The MessageHistory object contains an item in a message's transmission history.

The MessageInfo object contains information about a single Message object.

The Messages collection contains Message objects from either a User's Inbox or Outbox.

The NewMessage object allows the logged on user to prepare and submit a new
message to the Zetafax server for sending. The Outbox object represents a user’s Zetafax OUT directory. The Recipient object contains address details of an addressee for whom a message is intended. The Recipients collection object contains Recipient objects. The Server object allows control over the Zetafax server, and access to objects describing the server’s state. The ServerInfo object exposes the status and configuration of the Zetafax server.

The UserSession object contains details about a Zetafax user’s configuration, messages and gives you the ability to create new messages for sending.

The ZfAPI object is the Application object of the COM version of the API, and is the only object that can be created directly. You must create this object and logon before you can access any of the other objects.

Type Definitions

DevStatusEnum The DevStatusEnum enumeration specifies the current status of a Device.

EventEnum The EventEnum enumeration specifies the event described in a MessageHistory object.

FaxTypeEnum The FaxTypeEnum enumeration specifies how a recipient will be sent a message.

FormatEnum The FormatEnum enumeration specifies the format of the data file to be sent.

HeaderEnum This HeaderEnum Enumeration specifies the content of the header line to appear in the top page of each fax.

LinkStatusEnum The LinkStatusEnum enumeration specifies the current status of an LCR link.

PriorityEnum The PriorityEnum enumeration specifies the priority of an outgoing message.

QualityEnum The QualityEnum enumeration specifies the resolution when sending a fax.
The RouteEnum enumeration specifies the type of route used
The SendTimeEnum enumeration specifies when a message will be sent
The StatusEnum specifies the current status of a message
The StatusEnum specifies the 'user status' of a message (that is the user's awareness of the message)
The ZfErr enumeration specifies the errors returned the API.

ZfLib.DevStatusEnum

Enum ZfLib.DevStatusEnum

  zfDevStatusIdle = 1
  zfDevStatusError = 2
  zfDevStatusFailed = 3
  zfDevStatusOffline = 4
  zfDevStatusBusy = 5
  zfDevStatusWaitingConnect = 6
  zfDevStatusSending = 7
  zfDevStatusReceiving = 8
  zfDevStatusWaitingScanDoc = 11
  zfDevStatusIncomingCall = 13

End Enum

The DevStatusEnum enumeration specifies the current status of a Device.

Members

zfDevStatusBusy
The device is busy processing a message

zfDevStatusError
Trying to recover from an error

zfDevStatusFailed
Unable to recover from error

zfDevStatusIdle
The device is idle

zfDevStatusIncomingCall
The device has receive a request to recieve data

zfDevStatusOffline
The device has been turned off

zfDevStatusReceiving
Recieving data

zfDevStatusSending
Sending data

zfDevStatusWaitingConnect
The device is attempting to connect to a remote device

zfDevStatusWaitingScanDoc
Waiting for document to scan

See Also
Device

---

ZLib.EventEnum

Enum ZLib.EventEnum

zfEventSentOK = 1
zfEventRecdOK = 2
zfEventScanOK = 3
zfEventSentError = 4
zfEventRecdError = 5
zfEventScanError = 6
zfEventTried = 7
zfEventRouterSub = 8
zfEventRouterAcc = 9
zfEventRouterErr = 10

End Enum

The EventEnum enumeration specifies the event described in a MessageHistory object

Members

zfEventRecdError
Received with errors

zfEventRecdOK
Received successfully

zfEventRouterAcc
Accepted for transmission by remote server

zfEventRouterErr
Submission to a remote server failed

zfEventRouterSub
Passed to remote Zetafax server for sending

zfEventScanError
Scanning request completed with errors

zfEventScanOK
Scanned successfully
zfEventSentError
Sent with errors

zfEventSentOK
Sent successfully

zfEventTried
Send attempt was unsuccessful

See Also
MessageHistory

---

ZfLib.FaxTypeEnum

Enum ZfLib.FaxTypeEnum

zfFaxTypeFax = 1
zfFaxTypeLAN = 2
zfFaxTypeSMS = 3

End Enum

The FaxTypeEnum enumeration specifies how a recipient will be sent a message

Members

zfFaxTypeFax
Via fax

zfFaxTypeLAN
Via LAN (used to send messages to another Zetafax User)

zfFaxTypeSMS
Via SMS

See Also
Recipient

---

ZfLib.FormatEnum

Enum ZfLib.FormatEnum

zfFormatASCII= 1
zfFormatEpson= 2
zfFormatTIFFNormal = 3
zfFormatTIFFFine= 4

End Enum
The FormatEnum enumeration specifies the format of the data file to be sent.

**Members**

- `zfFormatASCII`: ASCII text (TXT)
- `zfFormatEpson`: Epson FX or LQ print spool file (EPN)
- `zfFormatTIFFFine`: 200x200 dpi TIFF fax file (G3F)
- `zfFormatTIFFNormal`: 200x100 dpi TIFF fax file (G3N)

**See Also**

`NewMessage`

---

**ZfLib.HeaderEnum**

**Enum ZfLib.HeaderEnum**

- `zfHeaderNone = 0`
- `zfHeaderNumber = 1`
- `zfHeaderTo = 2`
- `zfHeaderFrom = 4`
- `zfHeaderDate = 8`
- `zfHeaderTime = 16`

End Enum

This HeaderEnum Enumeration specifies the content of the header line to appear in the top page of each fax.

**Members**

- `zfHeaderDate`: Show date
- `zfHeaderFrom`: Show name of sender
- `zfHeaderNone`: Turn all header information off
- `zfHeaderNumber`: Show page numbers
- `zfHeaderTime`: Show time
- `zfHeaderTo`: Show name of recipient

---

© 2012 Equisys plc
Remarks
The members of this enumeration can be ORed together

See Also
NewMessage.Header

**ZfLib.LinkStatusEnum**

Enum ZfLib.LinkStatusEnum
zfLinkFailedWDog = 1
zfLinkOffline = 2
zfLinkFailedWDog = 3
zfLinkInitialising = 4
zfLinkShutdown = 5
zfLinkUnknownState = 6
End Enum

The LinkStatusEnum enumeration specifies the current status of an LCR link

**Members**

zfLinkFailedWDog
The server failed to receive an expected status message

zfLinkInitialising
The link is initialising but has started communicating with the remote server

zfLinkOffline
The remote server has closed the link or the local link is temporarily closed

zfLinkOnline
The link functioning normally

zfLinkShutdown
The link has been permanently closed.

zfLinkUnknownState
The link is initialising and has not yet heard from the remote server

See Also
Link

**ZfLib.PriorityEnum**

Enum ZfLib.PriorityEnum
zfPriorityBackground = 1
zfPriorityNormal = 2
zfPriorityUrgent = 3
The PriorityEnum enumeration specifies the priority of an outgoing message

**Members**

zfPriorityBackground
Send at low priority

zfPriorityNormal
Send with normal priority

zfPriorityUrgent
Send urgently

**See Also**
NewMessage

---

The QualityEnum enumeration specifies the resolution when sending a fax

**Members**

zfQualityDraft
Standard quality (200x100 dpi)

zfQualityHigh
Fine quality (200x200 dpi)

zfQualityNormal
Send the fax at default quality (configured by the Zetafax administrator)

**See Also**
NewMessage

---

The RouteEnum enumeration specifies the route to send a fax

**Members**

zfRouteFaxNormal = 2
zfRouteFaxFine = 3

---

End Enum

End Enum
The RouteEnum enumeration specifies the type of route used

Members

zfRouteFaxFine
Fine resolution fax (200x200 dpi)

zfRouteFaxNormal
Standard resolution fax (200x100 dpi)

zfRouteFaxSuperfine
Super-fine resolution fax (200x400 dpi)

See Also
MessageHistory

Enum ZfLib.SendTimeEnum
zfSendTimeNow = 1
zfSendTimeOffpeak = 2
zfSendTimeAfter = 3
End Enum

The SendTimeEnum enumeration specifies when a message will be sent

Members

zfSendTimeAfter
Send after specified time

zfSendTimeNow
Send as soon as possible

zfSendTimeOffpeak
Send during offpeak rates

See Also
NewMessage

Enum ZfLib.StatusEnum
zfStatusAdding = 1
zfStatusHeld = 2
zfStatusDeferred= 3
zfStatusWaiting = 4
zfStatusConverting = 6
zfStatusConnecting = 7
zfStatusSending = 8
zfStatusAborting= 10
zfStatusIncoming= 11
zfStatusSubRouter = 13
zfStatusAcceptRemote = 14
zfStatusOk= 30
zfStatusFailed = 31
zfStatusPreviewOK = 32
zfStatusPreviewFailed = 33
End Enum

The StatusEnum specifies the current status of a message

**Members**

zfStatusAborting
The message is currently being aborted

zfStatusAcceptRemote
Message accepted for transmission by remote server

zfStatusAdding
Message added to the queue

zfStatusConnecting
Connecting to remote device

zfStatusConverting
Being prepared for sending

zfStatusDeferred
Waiting for sending after a specific time

zfStatusFailed
Completed with one or more errors

zfStatusHeld
Message held by user

zfStatusIncoming
Being received by a device

zfStatusOk
Completed with no errors

zfStatusPreviewFailed
Failed to prepare for preview

zfStatusPreviewOK
Message ready for preview

zfStatusSending
Sending to remote device

zfStatusSubRouter
Passed to a remote Zetafax server for sending, but not yet acknowledged

zfStatusWaiting
Waiting for conversion or a free device to send the message

See Also
MessageInfo

**ZfLib.UserStatusEnum**

Enum ZfLib.UserStatusEnum
 zfUserStatusOK = 1
 zfUserStatusAware = 2
 zfUserStatusWaiting = 3
End Enum

The `StatusEnum` specifies the 'user status' of a message (that is the user's awareness of the message)

**Members**

zfUserStatusAware
The user is aware of message, but has not read it.

zfUserStatusOK
The message has been read.

zfUserStatusWaiting
Waiting for user to do something.

See Also
MessageInfo

**ZfErr**

Enum ZfErr
 zfErrE_INVALID_PARAM = &H8004F700
 zfErrE_NOT_INIT = &H8004F701
 zfErrE_INIT_FAIL = &H8004F702
 zfErrE_INVALID_ZF_INIT_FILE = &H8004F703
 zfErrE_INVALID_ZF_USER = &H8004F704
 zfErrE_CANT_LOG_ON = &H8004F705
 zfErrE_CANT_LOG_ON = zfErrE_CANT_LOG_ON
 zfErrE_PATH_NOT_FOUND = &H8004F706
 zfErrE_TOO_MANY_FILES = &H8004F707
 zfErrE_FILE_CREATE_ERROR = &H8004F708
 zfErrE_FILE_OPEN_ERROR = &H8004F709
 zfErrE_FILE_ERROR = &H8004F70A
 zfErrE_FILE_NOT_FOUND = &H8004F70B
 zfErrE_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING = &H8004F70C
 zfErrE_INVALID_DATA_FORMAT = &H8004F70D
Zetafax 2012 API Help

zfErrE_MSG_UNKNOWN = &H8004F70E
zfErrE_MSG_NOT_COMPLETED = &H8004F70F
zfErrE_MSG_EXISTS= &H8004F710
zfErrE_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR = &H8004F711
zfErrE_INFO_FILE_ERROR = &H8004F712
zfErrE_INFO_FILE_INVALID = &H8004F713
zfErrE_CANNOT_SUBMIT= &H8004F714
zfErrE_CANT_SUBMIT_REQUEST= zfErrE_CANNOT_SUBMIT
zfErrE_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL= &H8004F715
zfErrE_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID= &H8004F716
zfErrE_CANNOT_READ_MSG_DEFAULTS = &H8004F717
zfErrE_CANT_READ_MSG_DEFAULTS= zfErrE_CANNOT_READ_MSG_DEFAULTS
zfErrE_CONTROL_FILE_OPEN_ERROR = &H8004F718
zfErrE_CONTROL_FILE_ERROR = &H8004F719
zfErrE_CONTROL_FILE_INVALID = &H8004F71A
zfErrE_SERVER_RUNNING = &H8004F71B
zfErrE_NO_START_SYSMAN = &H8004F71C
zfErrE_SERVER_INI_FILE_ERROR = &H8004F71E
zfErrE_FUNCTION_ABORT = &H8004F71F
zfErrE_TIMEOUT_EXPIRED = &H8004F720
zfErrE_MALLOC_FAILED= &H8004F724
zfErrE_LICENCE_ERROR= &H8004F725
zfErrE_API_LICENSE_ERROR = &H8004F726
zfErrE_USER_NOT_INIT= &H8004F727
zfErrE_ACCESSDENIED = &H8004F728
zfErrE_REGISTRY_ERROR  = &H8004F729
zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_NOT_PRESENT= &H8004F72A
zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_ERROR= &H8004F72B
zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_MISSING_VALUE = &H8004F72C
zfErrE_FULLCOLLECTION  = &H8004F730
End Enum

The ZfErr enumeration specifies the errors returned the API.

Members

zfErrE_ACCESSDENIED
Access Denied

zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_ERROR
Active Directory error

zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_MISSING_VALUE
Active Directory value not set

zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_NOT_PRESENT
Active Directory server not present

zfErrE_API_LICENSE_ERROR
Your Zetafax licence does not permit you to use the API

zfErrE_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL
The buffer in which to return data was too small

zfErrE_CANT_LOG_ON
The user was already logged on or the API cannot access their directories

zfErrE_CANT_READ_MSG_DEFAULTS
Cannot read user’s USER.INI
zfErrE_CANNOT_SUBMIT
Error handling .SUB file

zfErrE_CONTROL_FILE_ERROR
Error reading/writing CTL file

zfErrE_CONTROL_FILE_INVALID
CTL file is corrupt

zfErrE_CONTROL_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
The API was unable to open the message's CTL file.

zfErrE_FILE_CREATE_ERROR
Too many open files

zfErrE_FILE_ERROR
Could not read/write to file

zfErrE_FILE_NOT_FOUND
The file could not be found

zfErrE_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
Could not open file

zfErrE_FULLCOLLECTION
The collection is full

zfErrE_FUNCTION_ABORT
The function failed because a user defined callback function returned "Abort and Stop" status

zfErrE_INFO_FILE_ERROR
Error updating/accessing MSGDIR.CTL

zfErrE_INFO_FILE_INVALID
MSGDIR.CTL is invalid

zfErrE_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
Could not open MSGDIR.CTL

zfErrE_INIT_FAIL
The API failed to initialise

zfErrE_INVALID_DATA_FORMAT
The data file format specified is not recognised

zfErrE_INVALID_PARAM
An invalid parameter was passed to the Zetafax API

zfErrE_INVALID_ZF_INIT_FILE
The API had problems reading ZETAFAK.INI

zfErrE_INVALID_ZF_USER
An attempt was made to log on to the API with an invalid user

zfErrE_LICENCE_ERROR
The API could not find the Zetafax licence

zfErrE_MALLOC_FAILED
The API ran out of memory.

zfErrE_MSG_EXISTS
This message already exists

zfErrE_MSG_NOT_COMPLETED
An attempt was made to modify a message that wasn't completed
zfErrE_MSG_UNKNOWN
The specified message could not be found

zfErrE_NOT_INIT
A call was made to the API when it had not been initialised with a call to ZfAPI.Logon

zfErrE_NO_START_SYSMAN
The API could not launch SYSMAN.EXE

zfErrE_PATH_NOT_FOUND
The API was passed an invalid path

zfErrE_REGISTRY_ERROR
Registry Error

zfErrE_SERVER_INI_FILE_ERROR
Problems accessing SETUP.INI

zfErrE_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
The Zetafax server isn't running

zfErrE_SERVER_RUNNING
The Zetafax server is running

zfErrE_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID
One or more lines in the specified .SUB file were invalid

zfErrE_TIMEOUT_EXPIRED
The specified function did not complete within the timeout period

zfErrE_TOO_MANY_FILES
There are too many files in this directory

zfErrE_USER_NOT_INIT
The API couldn't find the user of this session

**Remarks**

The error number may be returned as an IDispatch error. To see how these numbers map to the IDispatch errors and Zetafax's C API errors see the page Errors
**Change History**

This document details the change history of the COM API.

**9.0.322.0**

**New Objects:**

ZfLib.APIPrint - Enables API to print via Zetafax Printer

**New Methods/Properties:**

ZfLib.ZfAPI.SetZetafaxDirs - Enables API to override default logon server specified in the zfclient.ini file
ZfLib.ZfAPI.SetZetafaxServerFromAD - Enables API to override default logon server specified in the zfclient.ini file
ZfLib.ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServersFromAD - Gets list of Zetafax servers registered in Active Directory
ZfLib.ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServerInfoFromAD - Gets server directory shares from Active Directory
ZfLib.ZfAPI.SystemDir - Returns System directory set by call to SetZetafaxDirs or SetZetafaxServerFromAD
ZfLib.ZfAPI.ServerDir - Returns Server directory set by call to SetZetafaxDirs or SetZetafaxServerFromAD
ZfLib.ZfAPI.UsersDir - Returns Users directory set by call to SetZetafaxDirs or SetZetafaxServerFromAD
ZfLib.ZfAPI.RequestDir - Returns Request directory set by call to SetZetafaxDirs or SetZetafaxServerFromAD
ZfLib.ZfAPI.ZetafaxServer - Returns Zetafax server set by call to SetZetafaxServerFromAD

**Changes to Enumerations:**

ZfLib.ZfErr - Added zfErrE_REGISTRY_ERROR, zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_NOT_PRESENT, zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_ERROR, zfErrE_ACTIVE_DIRECTORY_MISSING_VALUE

**8.0.0.104**

**New Objects:**

ZfLib.Coversheet - Holds the name of a coversheet
ZfLib.Coversheets - Contains a collection of Coversheet objects
ZfLib.Letterhead - Holds the name of a letterhead
ZfLib.Letterheads - Contains a collection of Letterhead objects

**New Methods/Properties:**

ZfLib.Message.MarkMsgAsRead - This method marks a message as read
ZfLib.MessageHistory.Name - Name of recipient associated with this MessageHistory item
ZfLib.MessageHistory.Organisation - Organisation of recipient associated with this MessageHistory item
ZfLib.MessageInfo.Organisation - Property containing the organisation of the first recipient of the message
ZfLib.MessageInfo.Type - Property containing the type of the Message (Fax, or SMS)
ZfLib.MessageInfo.UserStatus - Property containing the UserStatus of a message. Can be used to tell if the message has been read
ZfLib.NewMessage.Body - After the NewMessage.Send has been called this property contains the unique file body of the message
ZfLib.Recipients.AddSMSRecipient - This method adds an SMS recipient to the message
ZfLib.ServerInfo.Coversheets - Property that returns a collection of Coversheets
ZfLib.ServerInfo.Letterheads - Property that returns a collection of Letterheads  
ZfLib.UserSession.Logoff - Ends a session.  
ZfLib.ZfAPI.LogonAnonymous - Creates an anonymous session

Changes to Enumerations:

ZfLib.UserStatusEnum - New enumeration used by MsgInfo.UserStatus  
ZfLib.FaxTypeEnum - Added zfFaxTypeSMS  
ZfLib.ZfErr - Added zfErrE_ACCESSDENIED and zfErrE_FULLCOLLECTION  
ZfLib.StatusEnum - Added zfStatusPreviewOK and zfStatusPreviewFailed

Behavioural Changes:

COM+ - If available, the COM API now runs using the security call context

Permissions - The COM API now checks access permissions before attempting file operations. If the required permissions are not available the call will fail with zfErrE_ACCESSDENIED

There have also been changes to improve general efficiency and speed of some of the COM API’s properties and methods
C language API

The C language Application Programmer's Interface (API) allows application programs to submit faxes to the Zetafax server for sending, and to control and monitor their progress as required.

A simple function call is provided to submit an ASCII text file in a given format. This format (termed Submit file format) includes details of the recipients of a message, in addition to the message text which can include text formatting such as bold and underlining. See The ZSUBMIT program for more on the Submit file format.

A range of other function calls allow other supported file formats to be submitted, and give full control over messages queued for a given user.

Libraries

The API comprises a set of C callable functions. It is distributed as a set of object libraries and a DLL (for use in different environments) for building into the application programs, together with a C header file containing definitions required to call the API functions. The following operating systems are currently supported:

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional
- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows 7
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008

Compilers

The object libraries for the API are available for use with the Microsoft C/C++ compiler.

File system structure

When the API is initialized you must specify a Zetafax username. Messages submitted by the API will appear as if submitted from a client logged on as this user, and the defaults for items such as the coversheet From name will be those for the user (exactly as if you submit a message from the client without changing any of the default values).

Store the message files to be sent in the user's out sub directory USERS\username\Z-OUT, where username is the username. If necessary API programs can use the ZfxGetUserOutDir function to get the name of this directory.

A message for sending consists of two files in the out directory: a control file and a data file. Both of these files, and all other files created by the server relating to this message, have the name filename.ext where filename identifies the message, and ext identifies the type of file. The filename is referred to in the API as the message body name, and this is supplied to the API functions when specifying messages to submit, delete, etc. The ZfxCreateAutoFile function is used to create a file with a unique body name in a given directory.

The control file is identified with a .CTL extension. This is an ASCII text file and gives full details of the options to be used in preparing a message for sending, including the coversheet, letterhead, and priority, together with details of the intended recipients of the message (name, organization, fax number, etc.). The file is updated by the server as the message is processed to give details of the progress for each addressee, errors, etc. For use with the API this file will generally have been created by interpreting a Submit format file.

The data file contains the message to be sent, and its extension depends on the format of the data.
Supported formats are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.TXT</td>
<td>ASCII text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.EPN</td>
<td>Epson FX or Epson LQ Windows driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.G3NTIFF</td>
<td>fax format normal resolution (200x100 dpi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.G3FTIFF</td>
<td>fax format fine resolution (200x200 dpi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Message information**

When a message is submitted to the server for sending (after creating a control file and a data file for the message), an entry is made in the info file in the user's out directory. This entry includes the file name of the message, the comment associated with it, and the current status of the message (converting, sending, etc.). The server is then notified that a new message is ready for sending, and will add the message to its queue.

The status field is updated by the server program as the message is processed. When the server completes processing of the message and the status has changed to OK or FAILED the message may be deleted. This is done by removing the info file entry then deleting the message files, and may be done either from the client or via the API.

Details of a message in the info file may be obtained using the ZfxGetMsgInfo or ZfxGetMsgList routines, giving details of a single message or all messages in the info file respectively. These store the information in a data structure of type ZFMSGINFO. The fields in this structure are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>szBody</td>
<td>Character string giving the body name of the message files (i.e. the file name without extension or preceding period.). The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_BODY_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szComment</td>
<td>Character string giving the description of the message being sent (as displayed on the right in the client main display). The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_COMMENT_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Current status of message. This is a variable of type ZFMSGSTATUS, and the value is one of the ZFMSG_??? values listed below.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following list gives the possible states for a message and their meanings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_ADDING</td>
<td>Message being added to queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_HELD</td>
<td>Message held by user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_DEFERRED</td>
<td>Message waiting for sending after a specific time, either because that time was specified when the message was submitted, or the user does not have sufficient permissions to send until after the given time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_WAITING</td>
<td>Waiting for conversion or for a free device to send the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_CONVERTING</td>
<td>Preparing the message for sending (merging with letterhead, creating coversheet, e.t.c.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_CONNECTING</td>
<td>Dialing remote device, or connecting to local printer, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ZFMSG_SENDING  Connection made, sending message to remote device.
ZFMSG_SCANNING  Not applicable.
ZFMSG_ABORTING  Processing an Abort request, waiting for device controller or convert program to cancel processing of the message.
ZFMSG_INCOMING  Being received by the device.

ZFMSG_OK  Completed (sent) successfully, with no errors. The message may now be deleted (using the ZfxDeleteMsg function).
ZFMSG_FAILED  Completed with one or more errors. Details of the errors which occurred are listed in the control file, although this would normally be checked manually. The message may now be deleted (using the ZfxDeleteMsg function).

Related topics
Function error returns and reference
Alphabetical reference
Message information functions
Message transmission history functions
Server and device status functions
Converting from older versions of the API
Converting programs from older versions of the Zetafax API

The API has been significantly extended over time. Existing API programs will continue to work correctly, and need not be rebuilt. However, any program which is to be rebuilt with the new version of the library will need some modification.

Version differences from versions 4.5 to 5 and 5 to 6 are detailed below.

For API 4.5 programs, a set of porting macros are included in the header file ZFAPI.H to allow programs to be ported with minimal changes (the addition of "#define" line before ZFAPI.H is included). They translate from the old function names to the new ones adding the necessary extra parameters. These are enabled by adding the following line before ZFAPI.H is included:

```c
#define API_VER 0x450
```

For API 5 programs the superceded function names and structures are still supported by the DLLs and libraries, but by default are not included in the header file to assist new programmers. To continue using the old functions, add the following line before ZFAPI.H is included:

```c
#define API_VER 0x500
```

However, the modifications required to reflect the changes described above are minor and quick to do. For clarity, it is therefore recommended that these changes are made in any programs which are still being developed or maintained, rather than relying on the porting macros.

Differences between version 4.5 and version 5

The API was significantly extended with Zetafax 5.

New features included:

- DLL version of library functions added
- Support for received faxes
- Retrieval of default user settings
- Support for multiple data files for each message
- Specifying the coversheet text in SUBMIT files

These enhancements made it necessary to make a number of changes to the original functions. The changes necessary for programs using version 4.5 are:

1. All functions have been renamed from Zf... to Zfx... (to ensure that any mismatching of old and new source code gives linker warnings).
2. Previously a function named ZfPrintError had to be written and was called directly by the API libraries. This function can now have any name, and is passed as a parameter to ZfxAPIInit. The prototype of the function has now changed to: void ZFAPICALLBACK Proc(CHAR FAR *).
3. All functions other than ZfxAPIInit and ZfxGetAPIVersion now take a session handle (of type ZFSESSIONHANDLE) as the first parameter. This is returned in the first parameter by the ZfxAPIInit function.
4. The following functions have an extra parameter of type ZFMSGDIR, to specify whether the function should act on the OUT or IN directory: ZfxAbortMsg, ZfxHoldMsg, ZfxReleaseMsg, ZfxDeleteMsg, ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus, ZfxGetMsgInfo, ZfxGetMsgList, ZfxGetMsgHistory
5. ZfxGetAPIVersion has an additional parameter to return an integer value giving the version number. This can be NULL if not required.
6. The functions ZfxSendSubmitFile, ZfxCreateCtlFile and ZfxCreateDataFile have been changed so they now take file names (CHAR FAR *) instead of file pointers (FILE *) to allow them to be used in the DLL version of the library. Three functions ZfxSendSubmitFileFP etc have been supplied in the static library version of the API to simplify porting of existing applications; these take file pointers as before.
**Differences between version 5 and version 6**

The API has been extended again for Zetafax 6.

New features include:

- Support for the subject line in faxes
- Inclusion of Least Cost Routing information in message status, message history, and server status calls
- Info structures and functions extended

These enhancements made it necessary to add new some new functions to the API. The new functions are similar to the original functions, but include extra parameters for newly supported features.

The following structures are new, replacing the equivalent structures without the "EX" ending:

- ZFMSGINFOEX
- ZFMSGHISTORYEX
- ZFSERVERINFOEX

The following functions are new, replacing the equivalent functions without the "Ex" ending:

- ZfxGetServerStatusEx
- ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx
- ZfxGetMsgInfoEx
- ZfxGetMsgListEx

**Related topics**

- Function error returns and reference
- Alphabetical reference
- Message information functions
- Message transmission history functions
- Server and device status functions
Function overview

This section gives a brief overview of the functions which comprise the API.

User supplied functions

If an API function encounters an error, it can call a user-supplied error routine with a textual error string before returning an error code to the calling program. This can be particularly useful when writing or testing the application.

General routines

Before using any API functions the program should call ZfxAPIInit. This specifies the username to use and returns a handle which is used in subsequent calls. It may be called more than once with different usernames if required. The ZfxAPIClosedown routine should be called by the program for each handle returned by ZfxAPIInit before exiting. The ZfxGetAPIVersion function returns the version number of the library (for printing in a startup message). ZfxCreateAutoFile generates a file in a given directory so that no other files exist with the same body name. Finally ZfxCheckServer checks whether the Zetafax server is running (although several of the other routines will also return an error if the Zetafax server is not running when they are called).

User information

Messages submitted by API programs use the Zetafax user's default settings for any message options which are not specified directly. The ZfxGetUserCoversheet and ZfxGetUserFromname functions return the user's default coversheet and sender name, and are used when a program wants to change its behavior depending on these settings.

Location of files

The standard Zetafax installation gives each user a base sub directory called USERS\username where username is the username. Message files for sending and received messages are stored by the server in sub directories USERS\username\Z-OUT and USERS\username\Z-IN respectively. The full pathnames of these directories are returned by the ZfxGetUserArea, ZfxGetUserOutDir and ZfxGetUserInDir functions respectively. Although not normally needed, the ZfxGetSystemArea routine may be used to obtain the full pathname of the SYSTEM sub directory, used for storing letterheads, etc.

Submitting a message

The simplest method of submitting a fax for sending is to create an ASCII text Submit file containing both the message options and the message text, then call the ZfxSendSubmitFile function. This creates a control and data file in the user's out directory, then submits the message to the server (which also makes an entry in the info file for that user).

Alternatively these three stages may be carried out independently. The ZfxCreateCtlFile function interprets the %MESSAGE% section of a Submit file, which contains details of the message options and addresses, and generates a control file. The ZfxCreateDataFile interprets the %TEXT% section of a Submit file to generate an ASCII text or Epson FX format data file if required (or a file of the correct format could simply be copied or created by the program). Finally the ZfxSendMsg function makes an entry in the info file and submits a control and data file pair to the server.

Programs which are unable to store a session handle for passing to the other routines can use ZfxVBSendSubmitFile. This is a self contained function which initializes an API session, submits a file, then closes the session again, and is ideal for calling from Visual Basic or macro languages.

There are three additional routines ZfxSendSubmitFileFP, ZfxCreateCtlFileFP and ZfxCreateDataFileFP which are provided to assist in porting programs written for older versions of the API. Their functions are the same as their namesakes above, but they use C file pointers instead of file names and are therefore
only supported in the static libraries, not in the DLL.

**Server status**

ZfxCheckServer checks whether the fax server is running (although several of the other routines will also return an error if the fax server is not running when they are called). ZfxGetServerStatusEx returns information about the server, including the number of queued messages in various states, the status of each of the devices, and the status of any links to remote servers.

**Server control**

ZfxStartServer, ZfxStopServer and ZfxRestartServer can be used to control the Zetafax server programs for completely automated systems.

**Message control**

Once a message has been submitted to the Zetafax server, its status may be obtained using the ZfxGetMsgInfo function. When the message completes, this function also specifies whether it was successfully transmitted. The ZfxGetMsgHistory function can be used to retrieve the full transmission history for the message, including details such as the number of dial attempts made and the connection time.

The ZfxGetMsgList function returns the status of all messages currently queued (or completed but not yet deleted) for the given user. The ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus function is used in conjunction with this - it checks whether the status of any messages for the user have changed since it was last called to save the overhead involved in calling ZfxGetMsgList unnecessarily.

The ZfxAbortMsg function requests the Zetafax server to abort processing of a given message (i.e. stop preparation or transmission of the message). When the server has completed processing it sets the message status to OK or FAILED. Messages in either of these states may be deleted from the info file by calling ZfxDeleteMsg. Optionally, this will also delete the control and data files for the message, together with any other temporary files generated by the server. The ZfxDeleteMsg function can also be used to delete all messages for a given user.

The ZfxHoldMsg and ZfxReleaseMsg functions can be used to pause and then resume processing for a specific message. Held messages are not submitted to devices for sending, though they retain their position in the queue.

These functions, except ZfxAbortMsg, ZfxHoldMsg, ZfxRushMsg and ZfxReleaseMsg, can also be used for received messages. API licensing

The API must be licensed on each Zetafax system on which you wish to run programs which use it (including the ZSUBMIT program). Call Equisys or your supplier for price details of multiple licenses.

**Related topics**

- Function error returns and reference
- Alphabetical reference
- Message information functions
- Message transmission history functions
- Server and device status functions
- Converting from older versions of the API
Message information

When a message is submitted to the server for sending (after creating a CONTROL file and DATA file for the message), an entry is made in the INFO file in the user’s OUT directory. This entry includes the file name of the message, the comment and subject line associated with it, and the current status of the message (converting, sending etc). The server is then notified that a new message is ready for sending, and will add the message to its queue.

The status field is updated by the server program as the message is processed. When the server completes processing of the message (and the status has changed to OK or FAILED) the message may be deleted. This is done by removing the INFO file entry, then deleting the message files, and may be done either from the client or via the API.

Details of a message in the INFO file may be obtained using the ZfxGetMsgInfoEx or ZfxGetMsgListEx routines, giving details of a single message or all messages in the INFO file respectively. These store the information in a data structure of type ZFMSGINFOEX. The fields in this structure are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Current status of message. This is a variable of type ZFMSGSTATUS, and the value is one of the ZFMSG_??? values listed below. Message status variables are given below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szBody</td>
<td>Character string giving the body name of the message files (ie the file name without extension or preceding '.'). The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_BODY_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szComment</td>
<td>Character string giving the description of the message being sent (as displayed on the right in the client main display). The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_COMMENT_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szSubject</td>
<td>Character string giving the subject of the message being sent (as displayed on the right in the client main display). The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_SUBJECT_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserStatus</td>
<td>Current status of message in relation to the user. This is a variable of type ZFMSGUSERSTATUS, and the value is one of the ZFMSG_??? values listed below. User status variables are given below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Type of message. This is a variable of type ZFMSGTYPE, and the value is one of the ZFTYPE_??? values listed below. Type variables are given below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szOrganisation</td>
<td>Character string giving the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
organisation field for the message being sent. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_COMMENT_LEN.

**Message status**

The following list gives the possible states for a message (variable of type ZFMSGSTATUS).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message state</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_ADDING</td>
<td>Message being added to queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_HELD</td>
<td>Message held by user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_DEFERRED</td>
<td>Message waiting for sending after a specific time, either because that time was specified when the message was submitted, or the user does not have sufficient permissions to send until after the given time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_WAITING</td>
<td>Waiting for conversion or for a free device to send the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_CONVERTING</td>
<td>Preparing the message for sending (merging with letterhead, creating coversheet etc).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_CONNECTING</td>
<td>Dialling remote device, or connecting to local printer etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_SENDING</td>
<td>Connection made, sending message to remote device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_SUB_ROUTER</td>
<td>Passed to a remote Zetafax server for sending, but not yet acknowledged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_ACCEPT_REMOTE</td>
<td>Message accepted for transmission by a remote Zetafax server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_SCANNING</td>
<td>(not applicable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_ABORTING</td>
<td>Processing an Abort request, waiting for device controller or convert program to cancel processing of the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_INCOMING</td>
<td>Being received by the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_WAITING_SCAN_DOC</td>
<td>(not applicable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_OK</td>
<td>Completed (sent or received) successfully, with no errors. For sent messages the message may now be deleted (using the ZfxDeleteMsg function). For received messages the DATA file contains the received message, so should be saved (if required) before calling ZfxDeleteMsg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_FAILED</td>
<td>Completed with one or more errors. Details of the errors that occurred are listed in the CONTROL file, although this would normally be checked manually. The message may now be deleted (using the ZfxDeleteMsg function). For received faxes any part of the message received before the error occurred will still be stored in the DATA file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_PREVIEW_OK</td>
<td>(not applicable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_PREVIEW_FAILED</td>
<td>(not applicable)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## User status

The following list gives the possible users states for a message (variable of type ZFMSGSTATUS).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message state</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_U_UNKNOWN</td>
<td>User Status unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_U_OK</td>
<td>Message has been read by user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_U_AWAITING</td>
<td>Message awaiting preview.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFMSG_U_WAITING</td>
<td>Waiting - i.e. unread.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## User status

The following list gives the possible values for the message type field (variable of type ZFMSGTYPE).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFTYPE_FAX</td>
<td>Fax message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFTYPE_LAN</td>
<td>Message for another Zetafax user (on the same LAN).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFTYPE_SMS</td>
<td>Text message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related topics

- Function overview
- Function error returns and reference
- Alphabetical reference
- Message transmission history functions
- Server and device status functions
- Converting from older versions of the API
Details of the transmission history for a message in the CONTROL file may be obtained using the \texttt{ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx} routine, giving details of a single addressee or all addressees. This stores the information in a data structure of type \texttt{ZFMSGHISTORYEX}. The fields in this structure are as follows:

Below you will find details for:

- **Message transmission history**
- **Message event types**
- **Message routes**

### Message transmission history

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EventType</td>
<td>Type of this record. This is a variable of type \texttt{ZFMSGEVENT}, and the value is one of the \texttt{ZFEVENT_??} values listed below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Event timestamp (range 1980 to 2079)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Month</td>
<td>Event timestamp (range 1 to 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day</td>
<td>Event timestamp (range 1 to 31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hours</td>
<td>Event timestamp (range 0 to 23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mins</td>
<td>Event timestamp (range 0 to 59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secs</td>
<td>Event timestamp (range 0 to 59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AddrNum</td>
<td>Addressee number (starts from 1). When a single message has been addressed to more than one person, this allows the events to be identified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Route</td>
<td>Route type used. This is a variable of type \texttt{ZFMSGROUTE}, and the value is one of the \texttt{ZFROUTE_??} values listed below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szRouteParams</td>
<td>Route parameters used. For fax routes this is the fax number dialled. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant \texttt{ZFDEV_PARAMS_LEN}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorCode</td>
<td>Reason for failure. This is a variable of type \texttt{ZFERR}. The error code can be any of the \texttt{L2ERR_??} values given in the file \texttt{ZFERR.H} - however note that the values depend on the version of the Zetafax server running, not the version of the API used. New versions of the server will have additional error codes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PagesSent</td>
<td>Number of last page successfully sent (including the coversheet if used). If a three page message had several attempts at sending, but only the first two pages were sent successfully, this value would be set to 2. For event type \texttt{ZFEVENT_SENT_OK} this is the total number of pages in the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConnectSecs</td>
<td>Connection time in seconds. This field only applies to events of type \texttt{ZFEVENT_SENT_OK} and \texttt{ZFEVENT_SENT_ERROR}, and gives the total connect time for the given addressee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szDevice</td>
<td>The name of the device used to send the message. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

©2012 Equisys plc
given by the constant ZFDEV_NAME_LEN.

szRemoteServer The name of the remote server used to send the message via LCR. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFDEV_NAME_LEN.

Message event types

The following list gives the possible event types for a message (variable of type ZFMSGEVENT).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_SENT_OK</td>
<td>Sent successfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_RECD_OK</td>
<td>Received successfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_SCAN_OK</td>
<td>Scanned successfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_SENT_ERROR</td>
<td>Sent with errors - the connection time and number of pages can be used to determine whether the error was during connection or transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_RECD_ERROR</td>
<td>Received with errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_SCAN_ERROR</td>
<td>Scanning request completed with errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_TRIED</td>
<td>Send attempt unsuccessful. The Zetafax server makes several attempts to send to a given addressee. This event is logged if a send attempt is unsuccessful, but the server will retry later. If all attempts are unsuccessful, the last attempt will be logged as an event of type ZFEVENT_SENT_ERROR, while all previous events are logged as ZFEVENT_TRIED events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_ROUTER_SUB</td>
<td>Passed to remote Zetafax server for sending (when Least Cost Routing in use)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_ROUTER_ACC</td>
<td>Accepted for transmission by remote server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFEVENT_ROUTER_ERR</td>
<td>Submission to a remote server failed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Message routes

The following list gives the possible routes for fax messages (variable of type ZFMSGROUTE). Note that other routes are also supported by the Zetafax server, so this list is not exhaustive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Route</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFROUTE_FAX_NORMAL</td>
<td>Standard resolution fax (200 x 100 dpi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFROUTE_FAX_FINE</td>
<td>Fine resolution fax (200 x 200 dpi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related topics
- Function overview
- Function error returns and reference
Message defaults

This structure contains the default message settings for the user. It is used in the ZfxGetMsgDefaultsEx() function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>This is a variable of type ZFMSGPRIORITY, and the value is one of the ZFPRIORITY_??? values listed below. Priority variables are given below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header</td>
<td>This is a variable of type ZFMSGHEADER, and can be a combination of one or more of the ZFHEADER_??? values listed below. Header variables are given below. These values should be combined using the bitwise-OR operator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality</td>
<td>This is a variable of type ZFMSGQUALITY, and the value is one of the ZFQUALITY_??? values listed below. Quality variables are given below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SendTime</td>
<td>Variable of type ZFSENDTIME determining when a message submitted by the user will be sent. The value is one of the ZFSENDTIME_??? values listed below. Send Time variables are given below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AfterYear, AfterMonth, AfterDay, AfterHour, AfterMin, AfterSec;</td>
<td>Short integer values specifying the 'send after' time. These parameters are ignored unless the SendTime parameter is set to ZFSENDTIME_AFTER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szFrom</td>
<td>Character string giving the from field to use. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_FULLNAME_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szCoversheet</td>
<td>Character string giving the name of the coversheet to use. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_COVERSHEET_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szLetterhead</td>
<td>Character string giving the name of the letterhead to use. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFMSG_LETTERHEAD_LEN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Priority**

The following list gives the possible values for message priority.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message priority</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFPRIORITY_BACKGROUND</td>
<td>The lowest priority - messages with this priority will be processed after messages with other priorities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFPRIORITY_NORMAL</td>
<td>Standard priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFPRIORITY_URGENT</td>
<td>The highest priority - messages with this priority will take precedence over messages with other priorities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Message header**

The following list gives the possible message header settings (variable of type ZFMSGHEADER).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message header setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFHEADER_NONE</td>
<td>No setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFHEADER_NUMBER</td>
<td>Phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFHEADER_TO</td>
<td>To field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFHEADER_FROM</td>
<td>From field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFHEADER_DATE</td>
<td>Date field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFHEADER_TIME</td>
<td>Time field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Quality**

The following list gives the possible values for message quality.
**Message quality**
ZFQUALITY_DRAFT
ZFQUALITY_NORMAL
ZFQUALITY_HIGH

**Description**
Low quality.
Standard quality.
High quality.

**Send time**
The following list gives the possible values for the SendTime field.

**Send time**
ZFSENDTIME_NOW
ZFSENDTIME_OFFPEAK
ZFSENDTIME_AFTER

**Description**
Send the message immediately.
Send the message during the offpeak period.
Send the message after the time specified by the 'send after' fields.

**Related topics**
Function overview
Function error returns and reference
Alphabetical reference
Message transmission history functions
Server and device status functions
Converting from older versions of the API
Server and device status

Details of the status of the server and the configured devices and links may be obtained using the ZfxGetServerStatusEx function. It is passed a structure of type ZFSERVERSTATUSEX which defines what information is required. The structure includes the addresses of three further structures of type ZFSERVERINFOEX, ZFDEVICEINFOEX and ZFLINKINFOEX, which are used to return the information.

Below you will find information on:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server information</th>
<th>Server status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device information</td>
<td>Device status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link information</td>
<td>Link status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Server status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServerInfoExSize</td>
<td>Should be set to sizeof (ZFSERVERINFOEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpServerInfoEx</td>
<td>Address of a SERVERINFOEX structure, to be filled on return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxDevices</td>
<td>Maximum number of device entries to be returned (i.e. number of elements in the DeviceInfo array)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpNumDevices</td>
<td>Address of short integer variable used to return the number of devices in the file. <strong>Note:</strong> that the returned value may be larger than the value given for MaxDevices if the buffer was not large enough for all entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeviceInfoExSize</td>
<td>Should be set to sizeof (ZFDEVICEINFOEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpDeviceInfoEx</td>
<td>Address of array of 'n' ZFDEVICEINFOEX structures, where 'n' is the value given by the MaxDevices parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxLinks</td>
<td>Maximum number of LCR link entries to be returned (ie number of elements in the LinkInfoEx array)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpNumLinks</td>
<td>Address of short integer variable used to return the number of links in the file. <strong>Note:</strong> that the returned value may be larger than the value given for MaxLinks if the buffer was not large enough for all entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LinkInfoExSize</td>
<td>Should be set to sizeof (ZFLINKINFOEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpLinkInfoEx</td>
<td>Address of array of 'n' ZFLINKINFOEX structures, where 'n' is the value given by the MaxLinks parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Server information

The fields in the `ZFSERVERINFOEX` structure are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Queue</td>
<td>Deferred Number of items in queue waiting until a given time (excluding those waiting before retrying after failure).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueWaitingResend</td>
<td>Number of items in queue waiting before retrying after a send attempt has failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueWaitingConvert</td>
<td>Number of items in queue waiting to be converted (prepared for sending).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueConverting</td>
<td>Number of items in queue being converted (prepared for sending) - currently either 0 or 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueWaitingDevice</td>
<td>Number of items in queue waiting for a device to become available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueSending</td>
<td>Number of send requests in queue being processed by a device - either connecting or sending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueScanning</td>
<td>Number of scan requests items in queue being processed by a scanning device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueSubRouter</td>
<td>Number of items submitted to Router for sending, and awaiting acceptance by a remote server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueueAcceptRemote</td>
<td>Number of items currently accepted for sending by remote servers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Device information

The fields in the `ZFDEVICEINFOEX` structure are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>szDevice</td>
<td>Name of the device. Device names comprise a device type and device number, separated by a hyphen (e.g., &quot;FCLASS-3&quot;). Two devices of different types can have the same number. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant <code>ZFDEV_NAME_LEN</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Current status of the device. This is a variable of <code>ZFDEVSTATUS</code>, and the value is one of the <code>ZFDEV</code> values listed below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szUser</td>
<td>User name of owner of message currently being processed by the device (or otherwise).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
null string if no message being processed). The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFUSER_NAME_LEN.

szMsgBody
Body name of message CONTROL file currently being processed by the device (or null string if no message being processed).

NumPages
Number of pages in message currently being processed (including coversheet if used).

CurrentPage
Page number currently being sent.

NumConnectFails
Number of send attempts by this device which have failed to connect.

NumSendFails
Number of send attempts by this device which have failed after connection.

NumSentOK
Number of messages sent successfully by the device.

Device status
The following list gives the possible status values for a device (variable of type ZFDEVSTATUS).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_UNKNOWN_STATE</td>
<td>Status unknown (eg not initialized yet). This could also occur if an API program is run with a later version of the Zetafax server which supports additional device states.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_IDLE</td>
<td>Ready for sending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_ERROR</td>
<td>Trying to recover from error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_FAILED</td>
<td>Unable to recover from error. The device status changes to ZFDEV_FAILED when the device is unable to recover from a status of ZFDEV_ERROR (generally after a fixed period of time).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_OFFLINE</td>
<td>Device set offline by user, and unavailable for sending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_BUSY</td>
<td>Generally busy, and unavailable for sending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_WAITING_CONNECT</td>
<td>Waiting for connection (for fax messages, this is the status between dialing the fax number and completing the fax handshake). Note that for dialed calls, the connection time starts from when the modem reports that the remote device has answered the call - the device status will gradually be ZFDEV_WAITING_CONNECT for several seconds after this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_SENDING</td>
<td>Connected to the remote device and sending the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_RECEIVING</td>
<td>Receiving an incoming message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_POLL_SEND</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_POLL_RECEIVE</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFDEV_WAITING_SCAN_DOC</td>
<td>For scanning requests, waiting for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Link information

The fields in the ZFLINKINFOEX structure are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>szRemoteServer</td>
<td>Name of the remote server to which the link is configured. The maximum length of this string (excluding terminating NULL) is given by the constant ZFDEV_NAME_LEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RemoteLinkStatus</td>
<td>Current status of the remote server on the link. This is a variable of type ZFLINKSTATUS, and the value is one of the ZFLINK_??? values listed below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LocalLinkStatus</td>
<td>Current status of the local server on the link. This is a variable of type ZFLINKSTATUS, and the value is one of the ZFLINK_??? values listed below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fConnectionOK</td>
<td>Current status of the connection (mail or WAN) to the remote server. This is a Boolean value, 1 for a good connection, 0 for no connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fLinkActive</td>
<td>This is a Boolean value indicating whether the link is active, and available for sending and receiving (1 if the link is active, 0 if the link is not active). This value is computed from RemoteLinkStatus, LocalLinkStatus and fConnectionOK fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumSentOK</td>
<td>Number of messages sent successfully by the remote server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumTimedOut</td>
<td>Number of messages timed out waiting for responses over the link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumRejected</td>
<td>Number of messages rejected by the remote server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumDeviceError</td>
<td>Number of messages failed to be sent by the remote server as a result of device errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumRemoteServerErr</td>
<td>Number of messages failed to be sent by the remote server as a result of other errors at the remote server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumUnack</td>
<td>Number of messages submitted to the remote server and still awaiting acknowledgement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumAck</td>
<td>Number of messages submitted to the remote server and acknowledged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumReceived</td>
<td>Number of messages received from the document to be scanned to be placed on the device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not supported

Answering an incoming call - state will change to ZFDEV_RECEIVING once the correct handshaking has occurred.
the remote server for sending locally.

**Link status**
The following list gives the possible status values for a link (variable of type ZFLINKSTATUS).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFLINK_UNKNOWN_STATE</td>
<td>Remote link status unknown. This occurs when the Zetafax server has not received any communication from the remote server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFLINKInicialising</td>
<td>Link is currently being initialised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFLINK_ONLINE</td>
<td>Link is online.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFLINK_OFFLINE</td>
<td>Link has been set to offline by the administrator, and is unavailable for sending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFLINK_FAILED_WDOG</td>
<td>The link watchdog failed to receive an expected message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFLINK_SHUTDOWN</td>
<td>The link has been shut down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFLINK_UNRECOGNISED_STATE</td>
<td>Unrecognised state. This could occur if an API program is run with a later version of the Zetafax server which supports additional link states.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related topics**
- Function overview
- Function error returns and reference
- Alphabetical reference
- Message information functions
- Message transmission history functions
- Converting from older versions of the API
## Function error returns and reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL</td>
<td>One of the buffer lengths specified in the call is smaller than the length of the string which is to be returned. Increase the buffer length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_CANNOT_LOG_ON</td>
<td>The user specified in the ZfxAPIInit call is already logged on (and the 'exclusive' option was specified), or the program has insufficient access permissions to the user directories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_CANNOT_READ_MSG_DEFAULTS</td>
<td>Unable to read the default settings for this user contained in the USER.INI files. Check the program has read access to the SYSTEM\Z-DB directory and the user's Z-DB directory, and that these files exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_CANNOT_RUN_SYSTEM_MANAGER</td>
<td>Error running the system manager program SYSMAN.EXE. Check the file exists in the ServerArea (as specified in the ZETAFAX.INI file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST</td>
<td>Error submitting request to the Zetafax server. Check access permissions to the REQUEST directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_ERROR</td>
<td>Error reading or writing CONTROL file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>CONTROL file is corrupt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_OPEN_ERROR</td>
<td>Unable to open the CONTROL file. Check the file exists, and that the program has sufficient access permissions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_ERROR_STARTING_SERVER</td>
<td>General error starting the server. The error is logged to the SERVER.LOG file in the SERVER\Z-DB directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_FILE_CREATE_ERROR</td>
<td>Unable to create the specified file. Check the path and file name are valid, and that the program has sufficient access rights to the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_FILE_ERROR</td>
<td>Unable to read from or write to the specified file. Check the path and file name are valid, the file exists, and that the program has sufficient access rights to the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_FILE_NOT_FOUND</td>
<td>The specified file does not exist. Check the path and file name are valid, the file exists, and that the program has sufficient access rights to the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR</td>
<td>Unable to open the specified file. Check the path and file name are valid, the file exists, and that the program has sufficient access rights to the directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ZFERR_FUNCTION_ABORTED                      | The function has failed because a user supplied callback function has
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR</td>
<td>Error reading or writing MSGDIR.CTL file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID</td>
<td>MSGDIR.CTL file is corrupt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR</td>
<td>Unable to open the MSGDIR.CTL file. Check the file exists, and that the program has sufficient access permissions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_INVALID_DATA_FORMAT</td>
<td>The data file format specified is unknown. Check the parameter and file type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS</td>
<td>One or more of the parameters given to the routine has an invalid format (eg file name too long). Check the parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_INVALID_ZF_INIT_FILE</td>
<td>The server directories could not be determined from the ZETAFAX.INI file. Check the file has not been corrupted, and if necessary reinstall the server or client on the PC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_MESSAGE_ALREADY_EXISTS</td>
<td>The message specified in the ZfxSendMsgEx call is already referenced in the INFO file. This can happen if a message file is deleted manually without calling ZfxDeleteMsg to delete the references, or if an existing control file is overwritten by a new one created without using the ZfxCreateAutoFile routine to ensure no files of the given name already exist. Call ZfxAbortMsg if the status is not OK or FAILED (to delete the message from server queues), call ZfxDeleteMsg and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_MESSAGE_NOT_COMPLETED</td>
<td>The message specified in the ZfxDeleteMsg call is still being processed by the server. Call ZfxAbortMsg first, then wait for the state to change to ZFMSG_OK or ZFMSG_FAILED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_NO_ZF_INIT_FILE</td>
<td>Initialization file ZETAFAX.INI not found. The directory containing this is normally given in the environment variable ZFAXINIT. Check that this variable exists in the environment - for an OS/2 program being run detached or from the program manager the SET ZFAXINIT= line must have been added to the CONFIG.SYS file, and the PC rebooted before the change will be noted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED</td>
<td>The ZfxAPIInit routine has not been called successfully. This must be done before calling the given routine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_PATH_NOT_FOUND</td>
<td>The given path or file does not exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING</td>
<td>The Zetafax server is not running, or the program is unable to communicate with the server. Check that the server has not been stopped, and that the program has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ZFERR_SERVER_RUNNING
Some or all of the server programs are already running. The server must be completely stopped before the ZfxStartServer function or ZfxDeleteMsg function (specifying all messages) can be used.

ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID
One or more lines in the SUBMIT file specified are invalid. The error text given in the ZfxPrintError call details the line at fault.

ZFERR_TIMEOUT_EXPIRED
The specified function has not completed within the timeout period.

ZFERR_TOO_MANY_FILES
Too many files (ie 1000) of the format specified in the ZfxCreateAutoFile call already exist, and a new one cannot be created.

ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE
The control file for the message specified does not exist, or it is not referenced in the INFO file.

ZFERR_UNKNOWN_USER
The Zetafax username given in the ZfxAPIInit call has not been configured on the Zetafax system.

Related topics
Function overview
Alphabetical reference
Message information functions
Message transmission history functions
Server and device status functions
Converting from older versions of the API
Alphabetical reference

There follows a description of all of the routines available within the Zetafax C language API. Each routine includes some example code showing how it may be called from within your application.

User supplied error message display function
ZfxAbortMsg
ZfxAPIInit
ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus
ZfxCheckServer
ZfxAPIClosedown
ZfxCreateAutoFile
ZfxCreateCtlFile
ZfxCreateCtlFileEx
ZfxCreateCtlFileFP
ZfxCreateDataFile
ZfxCreateDataFileFP
ZfxDeleteMsg
ZfxGetAPIVersion
ZfxGetMsgDefaultsEx
ZfxGetMsgInfo
ZfxGetMsgInfoEx
ZfxGetMsgHistory
ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx
ZfxGetMsgList
ZfxGetMsgListEx
ZfxGetServerStatus
ZfxGetServerStatusEx
ZfxGetSystemArea
ZfxGetUserArea
ZfxGetUserCoversheet
ZfxGetUserFromname
ZfxGetUserInDir
ZfxGetUserOutDir
ZfxHoldMsg
ZfxMarkMsgAsRead
ZfxReleaseMsg
ZfxRestartServer
ZfxRushMsg
ZfxSendMsg
ZfxSendMsgEx
ZfxSendSubmitFile
ZfxSendSubmitFileFP
ZfxStartServer
ZfxStopServer
ZfxVBSendSubmitFile

Related topics
Function error returns and reference
Message information functions
Message transmission history functions
Server and device status functions
Converting from older versions of the API
User supplied error message display function

Syntax

```c
void ZFAPICALLBACK MyError( char FAR *lpszErrorText)
```

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lpszErrorText</td>
<td>Null terminated string containing explanatory text for error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine should be defined within the application program itself - it can have any name. Its address is passed as one of the parameters to ZfxAPIInit, and it is called by the API before the API routines return certain error codes, to give additional text explaining why the call failed. For example, if a SUBMIT file is rejected the API will call this routine with the reason, before returning the error code ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID.

For programs which interact with the user the text is probably best displayed on screen, as an additional help to any error message which the program itself may display as a result of the returned error code. Other programs may wish to log the error to disk or ignore it (defining an empty function) as required. Note that a FAR (32-bit) pointer to the string is supplied - in 16 bit environments the "%Fs" (or equivalent) format specifier will be needed in calls to printf etc.

Return Value

There is no return value.

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
void ZFAPICALLBACK DisplayAPIError( char FAR *lpszText)
{
    /* Note - remember to use %Fs in 16 bit */
    /* programs because it is a FAR pointer */
    printf("API ERROR\n", lpszText);
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxAbortMsg

Gets the default message settings for the user.

**Syntax**

\[ZFERR\ FAR\ ZfxAbortMsg(\ ZFSESSIONHANDLE\ hSession,\ ZFMSGDIR\ MsgDir,\ char\ \ast\ lpszBody)\]

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type (ZFDIR_OUT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBodyBase</td>
<td>name of message file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**

This routine is called to stop the server processing a message after it has been submitted using ZfxSendMsgEx. The routine sends a request to the Zetafax server, which processes it asynchronously. The routine can be called even if the server has already finished processing the message.

**Return value**

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE
- ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
- ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

**Example**

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
if (ZfxAbortMsg(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000") == 0)
{
    printf("Message aborted\n");
    /* now wait for status to change to */
    /* ZFMSG_OK or ZFMSG_FAILED before */
    /* deleting the message */
...
}
```

**Related topics**

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxAPIClosedown

Closedown API routines.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxAPIClosedown( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine should be called for each session handle returned by ZfxAPIInit. It releases any resources used by the API routines.

Return value

The routine returns 0.

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession;
if (ZfxAPIInit(&hSession, "FRED", TRUE, MyErrorProc) == 0)
{
    /* call other API functions */
    ...
    /* now cleanup */
    ZfxAPIClosedown(hSession);
}
```

Related topics

- Alphabetical reference
- Function error returns and reference
ZfxAPIInit

Initialise Zetafax API.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxAPIInit( ZFSESSIONHANDLE *phSession, char FAR *lpszUserName, short fExclusive, ZFERRORPROC *lpErrorProc)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phSession</td>
<td>Address of variable of type ZFSESSIONHANDLE, used to return the API session handle. This handle should then be passed to other API functions to identify the session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszUserName</td>
<td>Zetafax username to use when submitting messages fExclusiveZero if this user is permitted to be logged on elsewhere (either on a normal Zetafax client, or in another API program).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpErrorProc</td>
<td>Address of error message callback function, called when an error occurs with a text string if there is additional information relating to the error. This can be set to NULL if not required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine should be called before calling any of the other API functions. The routine may be called more than once by the program if it wishes to log on as more than one user. The paired routine ZfxAPIClosedown should be called for each handle returned by this function before exiting from the program.

If the fExclusive flag is set (non-zero), then each call to this function may result in a "lock" file being kept open until ZfxAPIClosedown is called. Because most programs have a limit to the total number of files which may be kept open, it is recommended that you only have one session open at a time if fExclusive is set - ie ZfxAPIClosedown is always called before calling ZfxAPIInit again.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_NO_ZF_INIT_FILE
ZFERR_INVALID_ZF_INIT_FILE
ZFERR_UNKNOWN_USER
ZFERR_CANNOT_LOG_ON
Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

ZFERR Err;
ZFSSESSIONHANDLE hSession;

/* Log on as FRED, which sets hSession if ok */

Err = ZfxAPIInit(&hSession, "FRED", TRUE, MyErrorProc);
if (Err == 0)
{
    /* call required functions */
    ...

    /* cleanup */
    ZfxAPIClosedown(hSession);
}
else
{
    printf("Unable to log in as FRED\n");
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus

Check if message status has changed.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, short FAR *lpfStatusChanged)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type - ZFDIR_OUT for sent messages, or ZFDIR_IN for received messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpfStatus</td>
<td>Changed Address of short integer boolean variable which is set to a non-zero value if the status of one or more messages may have changed since the last call to this function, 0 otherwise 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine checks whether the status of any of the messages in the current user's OUT or IN directory (depending on the setting of MsgDir) has changed. If the fStatusChanged variable is set (non-zero) on return then the calling program should call the ZfxGetMsgInfoEx routine for each message it is interested in (or the ZfxGetMsgListEx to get information for all messages) to identify what (if anything) has changed.

This function is supplied because ZfxGetMsgInfoEx and ZfxGetMsgListEx stop the server updating the status of any messages for that user while running, and should therefore only be called when necessary. The ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus function acts by checking the attributes of a file, and therefore it is recommended that it is not called more frequently than every 5 to 10 seconds unless a quicker response is required.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
for (;;) {
    if (ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, &fChanged) == 0 && fChanged)
        /* call ZfxGetMsgListEx */
```
Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxCheckServer

Check server running.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCheckServer( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine checks whether the Zetafax server is running. The server must be running before messages can be submitted for sending.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if the server is running correctly, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>

...

if (ZfxCheckServer(hSession) != 0)
{
    printf("Problem checking Zetafax server\n");
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxCreateAutoFile

Creates file name with unique body.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCreateAutoFile( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszPrefix, char FAR *lpszExtn, char FAR *lpszPath, char FAR *lpszBody)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszPrefix</td>
<td>4 character identifier for file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszExtn</td>
<td>1 to 3 character extension for file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszPath</td>
<td>Full pathname of directory to contain file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Address of buffer (of length ZFMSG_BODY_LEN+1) to receive body name of file which is created (returned)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine creates a file in the given directory, where no other file in the directory has the same body name (ie the part of the file name excluding the extension). The file name created has the form "~ppppnnn.xxx" where pppp and xxx are the prefix name and extension specified in the call, and nnn is a number from 000 to 999 (or can be 3 alphanumeric characters if the directory already contains a large number of matching files).

The routine is used when creating message files to be sent, since each message has a unique body name. It is recommended that the first character of the base name chosen is "X" to guarantee that files created by application programs are not confused with ones created by the Zetafax client (although this is not mandatory).

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_PATH_NOT_FOUND
ZFERR_TOO_MANY_FILES
ZFERR_FILE_CREATE_ERROR

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...  
char szBody[ZFMSG_BODY_LEN+1];
char szUserOutDir[256];
if (ZfxGetUserOutDir(hSession, szUserOutDir, sizeof(szUserOutDir)) == 0 &&
ZfxCreateAutoFile(hSession, "XSUB", "TMP", szUserOutDir, szBody) == 0) {
```
printf("Created file %s\n", szUserOutDir, szBody);
}

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxCreateCtlFile

Create a CONTROL file from SUBMIT format file.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCreateCtlFile( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszSubmitFile, char FAR *lpszControlFile, char FAR *lpszBody, char FAR *lpszDataExtn, char FAR *lpszDataExtnBuf, char FAR *lpszCommentBuf)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SubmitFile</td>
<td>Name of submit file (with path if not in current directory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszControl</td>
<td>FileName of new CONTROL file (with path if not in current directory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Data file extension for the required format, or NULL to use the default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtn</td>
<td>Data file extension for the required format, or NULL to use the default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtnBuf</td>
<td>Address of buffer of length 4 bytes. On return this will contain the data file extension to use. If the lpszDataExtn parameter was given as NULL then this will give the data format specified in the Syntax line in the SUBMIT file (or the default value of TXT for straight ASCII text if this line is not specified). If the lpszDataExtn was specified then an error is returned if the SUBMIT file contains a Syntax line which contradicts this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszCommentBuf</td>
<td>Address of buffer of length ZFMSG_COMMENT_LEN+1 used to return the message comment for specifying in a subsequent ZfxSendMsg call.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine interprets the \%\%[MESSAGE] of a given SUBMIT format file, writing the details to the given CONTROL file. It is used where the ZfxSendSubmitFile function does not give sufficient flexibility - for example when wishing to send an existing data file.

**NOTE** - this function is supplied for compatibility with version 5 of the Zetafax API only. Version 6 API applications should use ZfxCreateCtlFileEx.

Return value
The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_CREATE_ERROR
ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
/* create .CTL file in user's OUT directory */
ZfxGetUserOutDir(hSession, szOutDir, sizeof(szOutDir);
ZfxCreateAutoFile(hSession, "XSUB", "CTL", szOutDir, szBody); continued.
/* get name of the CTL file we've just created */
sprintf(szPath, "%s%s.CTL", szOutDir, szBody);
/* interpret the SUBMIT file created earlier */
/* to send an existing file of format G3F */
ZfxCreateCtlFile(hSession, "MYFILE.SUB", szPath, szBody, "G3F", szDataExtn, szComment);
/* Create data file in OUT directory */
sprintf(szPath, "%s%s.G3F", szOutDir, szBody);
... 
/* submit files */
ZfxSendMsg(hSession, szBody, "G3F", szComment);
```

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxCreateCtlFileEx

Create a CONTROL file from SUBMIT format file.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCreateCtlFileEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszSubmitFile, char FAR *lpszControlFile, char FAR *lpszDataExtn, char FAR *lpszDataExtnBuf, short MsgInfoExSize, ZFMSGINFOEX FAR *lpMsgInfoEx)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszSubmitFile</td>
<td>FileName of submit file (with path if not in current directory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszControl</td>
<td>FileName of new CONTROL file (with path if not in current directory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtn</td>
<td>Data file extension for the required format, or NULL to use the default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtnBuf</td>
<td>Address of buffer of length 4 bytes. On return this will contain the data file extension to use. If the lpszDataExtn parameter was given as NULL then this will give the data format specified in the Syntax line in the SUBMIT file (or the default value of TXT for straight ASCII text if this line is not specified). If the lpszDataExtn was specified then an error is returned if the SUBMIT file contains a Syntax line which contradicts this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgInfoExSize</td>
<td>Size of structure - should be set to sizeof(ZFMSGINFOEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpMsgInfoEx</td>
<td>Address of a single ZFMSGINFOEX structure, which is filled with the details of the message (body, comment etc) on return.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine interprets the %%(MESSAGE) of a given SUBMIT format file, writing the details to the given CONTROL file. It is used where the ZfxSendSubmitFile function does not give sufficient flexibility - for example when wishing to send an existing data file.

Return value
The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_CREATE_ERROR
ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

/* create .CTL file in user's OUT directory */
ZfxGetUserOutDir(hSession, szOutDir, sizeof(szOutDir));
ZfxCreateAutoFile(hSession, "XSUB", "CTL", szOutDir, MsgInfoEx.szBody);

/* get name of the CTL file we've just created */
sprintf(szPath, "%s%s.CTL", szOutDir, MsgInfoEx.szBody);

/* interpret the SUBMIT file created earlier */
/* to send an existing file of format G3F */
ZfxCreateCtlFileEx(hSession, "MYFILE.SUB", szPath, "G3F", szDataExtn, sizeof (ZFMSGINFOEX), &MsgInfoEx);

/* Create data file in OUT directory */
sprintf(szPath, "%s%s.G3F", szOutDir, MsgInfoEx.szBody);
...

/* submit files */
ZfxSendMsgEx(hSession, "G3F", sizeof(ZFMSGINFOEX), &MsgInfoEx);
```

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxCreateCtlFileFP

Create a CONTROL file (old version).

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCreateCtlFileFP( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, FILE *fpSubmit, FILE *fpControl, char FAR *lpszBody, char FAR *lpszDataExtn, char FAR *lpszDataExtnBuf, char FAR *lpszCommentBuf)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpSubmit</td>
<td>File pointer for SUBMIT format file, opened in binary mode with read access (eg an &quot;rb&quot; parameter to the fopen call). The file pointer should be positioned at the start of the %%%MESSAGE line. On return the file pointer is positioned at the start of the next line found in the file which starts with &quot;%&quot; (signifying the end of the %%%MESSAGE section) if one exists, or the end of file otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpControl</td>
<td>File pointer for new CONTROL file, opened with in binary mode with write access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Message body name (base name of control and data file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtn</td>
<td>Data file extension for the required format, or NULL to use the default (or to allow the Syntax line in the SUBMIT file to overwrite the default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtnBuf</td>
<td>Address of buffer of length 4 bytes. On return this will contain the data file extension to use. If the lpszDataExtn parameter was given as NULL then this will give the data format specified in the Syntax line in the SUBMIT file (or the default value of TXT for straight ASCII text if this line is not specified). If the lpszDataExtn was specified then an error is returned if the SUBMIT file contains a Syntax line which contradicts this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszComment</td>
<td>Buf Address of buffer of length ZFMSG_COMMENT_LEN+1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
used to return the message comment for specifying in a subsequent ZfxSendMsg call.

**Description**

This routine interprets the \%\%[MESSAGE] of a given SUBMIT format file, writing the details to the given CONTROL file. It is used where the ZfxSendSubmitFile function does not give sufficient flexibility - for example when wishing to send an existing data file.

**NOTE** - this routine is supplied for historic reasons to assist porting applications written for an older version of the API. Because of its use of file pointers is only supported in the static library version of the API, not the DLL. New programs should use the ZfxCreateCtlFileEx function instead.

**Return value**

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
- ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID

**Example**

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
/* create .CTL file in user's OUT directory */
ZfxGetUserOutDir(hSession, szOutDir, sizeof(szOutDir);
ZfxCreateAutoFile(hSession, "XSUB", "CTL", szOutDir, szBody);

/* open the CTL file we've just created */
sprintf(szPath, "%s\%s.CTL", szOutDir, szBody);
fpCtl = fopen(szPath, "wb");

/* interpret the SUBMIT file created earlier */
/* to send an existing G3F format file */
ZfxCreateCtlFileFP(hSession, fpSubmit, fpCtl, szBody, "G3F", szDataExtn, szComment);
fclose(fpCtl);

/* Create data file in OUT directory */
sprintf(szPath, "%s\%s.G3F", szOutDir, szBody);
...

/* submit files */
ZfxSendMsg(hSession, szBody, "G3F", szComment);
```

**Related topics**

- Alphabetical reference
- Function error returns and reference
ZfxCreateDataFile

Create a DATA file from SUBMIT format file.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCreateDataFile( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszSubmitFile, char FAR *lpszDataFile, char FAR *lpszDataExtn)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszSubmitFile</td>
<td>Name of submit file (with path if not in current directory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataFile</td>
<td>Name of new DATA file (with path if not in current directory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtn</td>
<td>Data file extension for the required format - either &quot;TXT&quot; for ASCII text, or &quot;EPN&quot; for Epson print format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine interprets the %%[TEXT] of a given SUBMIT format file, writing the details to the given CONTROL file. It is used where the ZfxSendSubmitFile function does not give sufficient flexibility - for example when wishing to send an existing data file.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_CREATE_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
/* create .CTL file in user's OUT directory */
...
/* Create data file in OUT directory */
sprintf(szPath, "%s\%s.EPN", szOutDir, szBody);
ZfxCreateDataFile(hSession, "MYFILE.SUB", szPath, "EPN");
/* submit files */
...
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxCreateDataFileFP

Create a DATA file (old version).

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxCreateDataFile( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, FILE *fpSubmit, FILE *fpData, char FAR *lpszDataExtn)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpSubmit</td>
<td>File pointer for SUBMIT format file, opened in binary mode with read access (eg an &quot;rb&quot; parameter to the fopen call). The file pointer should be positioned at the start of the %%%[TEXT] line. The routine interprets all the file from the current position to the end of the file, treating the contents as the message to be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpData</td>
<td>File pointer for new DATA file, opened in binary mode with write access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtn</td>
<td>Data file extension for the required format - either &quot;TXT&quot; for ASCII text, or &quot;EPN&quot; for Epson print format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine interprets the %%%[TEXT] of a given SUBMIT format file, writing the details to the given CONTROL file. It is used where the ZfxSendSubmitFile function does not give sufficient flexibility - for example when wishing to send an existing data file.

NOTE - this routine is supplied for historic reasons to assist porting applications written for an older version of the API. Because of its use of file pointers is only supported in the static library version of the API, not the DLL. New programs should use the ZfxCreateDataFile function instead.

Return Value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOTInicialised
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID

Example

#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

© 2012 Equisys plc
/* create .CTL file in user's OUT directory */
...
/* create data file */
sprintf(szPath, "%s.EPN", szOutDir, szBody);
fpData = fopen(szPath, "wb");
ZfxCreateDataFileFP(hSession, fpSubmit, fpData, "EPN");
fclose(fpData);
/* submit files */
...

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxDeleteMsg

Delete message entry.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxDeleteMsg( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody, short fDeleteFiles)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type - ZFDIR_OUT for sent messages, or ZFDIR_IN for received messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Message body name - NULL to delete all messages for this user</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine is called to remove the entry for a given message from the OUT or IN directory message INFO file, and optionally to delete the associated data files. If the server is stopped and the body name is specified as NULL then this routine will reset the specified directory (and its subdirectories) to delete all entries from the queue. Note that if the fDeleteFiles flag is set in this case all files will be deleted from the OUT directory and its subdirectories or the Z-IN directory, and a new empty INFO file generated.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_MESSAGE_NOT_COMPLETED
ZFERR_SERVER_RUNNING

Example

#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

© 2012 Equisys plc
/* following call fails if message status not */
/* ZFMSG_FAILED or ZFMSG_OK */
if (ZfxDeleteMsg(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000", TRUE) == 0)
{
    printf("Message deleted\n");
}

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetAPIVersion

Get version identifier for API routines.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetAPIVersion( char FAR *lpszBuffer, short BufLen, unsigned short FAR *lpusVersion)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lpszBuffer</td>
<td>Address of buffer to store version identifier string, or NULL if not required. BufLenLength of buffer (including space for terminating null)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpusVersion</td>
<td>Address of unsigned short integer variable used to return the version number of the API routines, or NULL if not required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets a version identifier for the API routines. The version identifier is 20 characters or fewer (generally about 5 characters plus terminating null), and may be used when displaying the version number an application program.

The numeric version number will allow future programs to detect when they are running with an older version of the API. This is currently set to 0x600 (hex) - it is recommended that programs do not object if this number is higher than expected to allow for future updates to the API without the need to rebuild the programs.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
ZFERR_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

char szVersion[20+1];
unsigned short usVersion;
printf("Automatic invoicing program v2.27\n");

if (ZfxGetAPIVersion(&szVersion, sizeof(szVersion), &usVersion) == 0)
{
    printf("Zetafax API version %s\n", szVersion);
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetMsgDefaultsEx

Gets the default message settings for the user.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetMsgDefaultsEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, short MsgDefaultsExSize, ZFMSGDEFAULTSEX *lpMsgDefaultsEx)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hsession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDefaultsExSize</td>
<td>Size of ZFMSGDEFAULTSEX structure. Must be the size (in bytes) of a ZFMSGDEFAULTSEX structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpMsgDefaultsEx</td>
<td>Pointer to memory allocated for a ZFMSGDEFAULTSEX structure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine is called to get the default message settings for the Zetafax user associated with the API session associated with the passed session handle.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
ZFMSGDEFAULTSEX ZfMsgDefaults;
memset(&ZfMsgDefaults, (int) 0, sizeof(ZFMSGDEFAULTSEX))
if (ZfxGetMsgDefaultsEx(hSession, sizeof(ZFMSGDEFAULTSEX), &ZfMsgDefaults) == 0)
{
    /* 'ZfMsgDefaults' structure now */
    /* contains the default message */
    /* settings for the user */
    printf("Default message priority is %d\n", ZfMsgDefaults.Priority); ...
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZFGetMSGDEFAULTSEX_structure
ZfxGetMsgHistory

Get transmission history information for message.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetMsgHistory( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody, short AddrNum, short fAllEvents, short MaxEntries, short FAR *lpNumEntries, short MsgHistorySize, ZFMSGINFO FAR *lpMsgHistory)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Message file body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AddrNum</td>
<td>Which addressee events are required for (first addressee is number 1), or 0 to retrieve events for all addressees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fAllEvents</td>
<td>Non zero if events of type ZEVENT TRIED are to be included, otherwise only &quot;final state&quot; events are included.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxEntries</td>
<td>Maximum number of entries to be returned (ie number of elements in the arrays which follow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpNumEntries</td>
<td>Address of short integer variable used to return the number of events in the file. Note that the returned value may be larger than the value given for MaxEntries if the buffer was not large enough for all entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgHistorySize</td>
<td>Size of structure - should be set to sizeof(ZFMSGHISTORY)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets a list of the transmission history entries in the CONTROL file for a given message, giving the information about transmission attempts (result, connection time etc.).
If the number of entries in the list exceeds the MaxEntries parameter, then the routine returns information about the first MaxEntries entries, but sets the lpNumEntries parameter to the total number of entries in the list. Be careful therefore to only read the lesser of (MaxEntries) and (lpNumEntries) elements of the array on return. Calling the routine with MaxEntries set to 0 will just return a count of the number of entries.

The fAllEvents flag can be used to specify whether all dial and transmission attempts should be included, or just the final status. If only the final status for a given addressee is required then the function can be called with the fAllEvents flag set to FALSE (0), and a single ZFMSGHISTORY buffer (MaxEntries = 1).

The routine opens and reads the CONTROL file for the message. This is the file that is updated by the Zetafax server while the message is in its queue. It is therefore necessary to protect against calling this routine too frequently while the entry is in the server queue. Use ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus and ZfxGetMsgInfo to wait until the message has completed before calling this routine.

**NOTE** - this function is supplied for compatibility with version 5 of the Zetafax API only. Version 6 API applications should use ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx.

**Return value**

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
- ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_ERROR
- ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_INVALID

**Example**

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
#define LIST_SIZE 20

ZFMSGHISTORY aMsgHistory[LIST_SIZE];
Err = ZfxGetMsgHistory(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~SEND000", 1, TRUE, LIST_SIZE, &NumEntries, sizeof(ZFMSGHISTORY), MsgHistory);
if (Err != 0) {
    return;
}
if (NumEntries > LIST_SIZE) {
    printf("Total messages %d\n", NumEntries);
    printf("Displaying first %d\n", LIST_SIZE);
}
for (Entry = 0, Tries = 1; Entry < min(NumEntries, LIST_SIZE); Entry++) {
    switch (aMsgHistory[Entry]->EventType) {
    case ZFEVENT_TRIED: Tries++;
        printf("Tried unsuccessfully\n");
        break;
    case ZFEVENT_SENT_OK:
        Tries++;
        printf("Sent OK on attempt %d\n" Tries);
        printf("Connect time %d secs\n", MsgHistory[Event].ConnectSecs);
        break;
    case ZFEVENT_SENT_ERROR:
        Tries++;
        printf("Sent ERROR\n");
        break;
    case ZFEVENT_DIAL_ERROR:
        printf("Dial ERROR\n");
        break;
    case ZFEVENT_SEND_ERROR:
        printf("Send ERROR\n");
        break;
    default:
        printf("Unknown event\n");
        break;
    }
    printf("Event for addressee %s\n", aMsgHistory[Entry]->Addressee);
    printf("Event type %s\n", aMsgHistory[Entry]->EventType);
    printf("Event status %s\n", aMsgHistory[Entry]->EventStatus);
    printf("Event outcome %s\n", aMsgHistory[Entry]->EventOutcome);
    printf("Event time %d secs\n", MsgHistory[Event].ConnectSecs);
}
```

© 2012 Equisys plc
printf("Failed after %d attempts\n", Tries);
printf("Pages sent %d\n", aMsgHistory[Event].Pages);
break;

default:
    /* ignore other events */
    break;
}

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx

Get transmission history information for message.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody, short AddrNum, SHORT fAllEvents, short MaxEntries, short FAR *lpNumEntries, short MsgHistoryExSize, ZFMSGHISTORYEX FAR *lpMsgHistoryEx)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MsgDirMessage type - ZFDIR_OUT for sent messages, or ZFDIR_IN for received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszbody</td>
<td>Body of message file to get history forAddrNumWhich addressee events are required for (first addressee is number 1), or 0 to retrieve events for all addressees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fAllEvents</td>
<td>Non zero if events of type ZFEVENT_TRIED are to be included, otherwise only &quot;final state&quot; events are included.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MaxEntriesMaximum number of entries to be returned (ie number of elements in the arrays which follow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpNumEntries</td>
<td>Address of short integer variable used to return the number of events in the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that the returned value may be larger than the value given for MaxEntries if the buffer was not large enough for all entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgHistoryExSize</td>
<td>Size of structure - should be set to sizeof (ZFMSGHISTORYEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lpMsgHistoryExAddress of array of ‘n’ ZFMSGHISTORYEX structures, where ‘n’ is the value given by the MaxEntries parameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets a list of the transmission history entries in the CONTROL file for a given message, giving the information about transmission attempts (result, connection time etc).

If the number of entries in the list exceeds the MaxEntries parameter, then the routine returns information about the first MaxEntries entries, but sets the lpNumEntries parameter to the total number of entries in
the list. Be careful therefore to only read the lesser of (MaxEntries) and (lpNumEntries) elements of the array on return. Calling the routine with MaxEntries set to 0 will just return a count of the number of entries.

The fAllEvents flag can be used to specify whether all dial and transmission attempts should be included, or just the final status. If only the final status for a given addressee is required then the function can be called with the fAllEvents flag set to FALSE (0), and a single ZFMSGHISTORY buffer (MaxEntries = 1).

The routine opens and reads the CONTROLLER file for the message. This is the file which is updated by the Zetafax server while the message is in its queue. It is therefore necessary to protect against calling this routine too frequently while the entry is in the server queue - this can be done by using the ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus and ZfxGetMsgInfoEx routines to wait until the message has completed before calling this routine.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
ZFERR_NOTInicialised
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_CONTROL_FILE_INVALID

Example

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>

#define LIST_SIZE 20
ZFMSGHISTORYEX aMsgHistoryEx[LIST_SIZE];
Err = ZfxGetMsgHistoryEx(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~SEND000", 1, TRUE, LIST_SIZE, &NumEntries, sizeof(ZFMSGHISTORYEX), MsgHistoryEx);
if (Err != 0)
{
    return;
}
if (NumEntries > LIST_SIZE)
{
    printf("Total messages %d\n", NumEntries);
    printf("Displaying first %d\n", LIST_SIZE);
}
for (Entry = 0, Tries = 1; Entry < min(NumEntries, LIST_SIZE); Entry++)
{
    switch (aMsgHistoryEx[Entry]->EventType)
    {
    case ZFEVENT_TRIED:
        Tries++;
        printf("Tried unsuccessfully\n");
        break;
    case ZFEVENT_SENT_OK:
        Tries++;
        printf("Sent OK on attempt %d\n", Tries);
        printf("Connect time %d secs\n", aMsgHistory[Event].ConnectSecs);
        break;
    case ZFEVENT_SENT_ERROR:
        Tries++;
```
printf("Failed after %d attempts\n", Tries);
printf("Pages sent %d\n", aMsgHistory[Event].Pages);
break;

default: /* ignore other events */
break;
}
ZfxGetMsgInfo

Get information about single message.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetMsgInfo( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody, ZFMSGINFO FAR *lpMsgInfo)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type - ZFDIR_OUT for sent messages, or ZFDIR_IN for received messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Message body name - NULL to delete all messages for this user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpMsgInfo</td>
<td>Address of a single ZFMSGINFO structure, which is filled with the details of the message (status etc) on return.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets information about a message in the user's OUT or IN directories. Note that if the status of several messages is required the ZfxGetMsgList function should be used instead, as this is more efficient than several calls to this routine.

NOTE - this function is supplied for compatibility with version 5 of the Zetafax API only. Version 6 API applications should use ZfxGetMsgInfoEx.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_INFO_OPEN_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
ZFMSGINFO MsgInfo;
if (ZfxGetMsgInfo(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000", &MsgInfo) == 0 && (MsgInfo.Status == ZFMSG_OK || MsgInfo.Status == ZFMSG_FAILED) { 
```
/* ok to delete message */

ZfxGetMsgInfoEx

Get information about single message.

**Syntax**

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetMsgInfoEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody, short MsgInfoExSize, ZFMSGINFOEX FAR *lpMsgInfoEx)

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type - ZFDIR_OUT for sent messages, or ZFDIR_IN for received messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Body of message file to retrieve MsgInfoExSize of the ZFMSGINFOEX structure. Should be set to sizeof (ZFMSGINFOEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpMsgInfoEx</td>
<td>Address of a single ZFMSGINFOEX structure, which is filled with the details of the message (status, comment, subject etc) on return.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**

This routine gets information about a message in the user's OUT or IN directories. Note that if the status of several messages is required the ZfxGetMsgListEx function should be used instead, as this is more efficient than several calls to this routine.

**Return value**

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_INFO_OPEN_FILE_ERROR
- ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
- ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
- ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE

**Example**

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

ZFMSGINFOEX MsgInfoEx;
if (ZfxGetMsgInfoEx(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000", sizeof(ZFMSGINFOEX), &MsgInfoEx) == 0

&& (MsgInfoEx.Status == ZFMSG_OK || MsgInfoEx.Status == ZFMSG_FAILED))
{
```
/* ok to delete message */
}

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetMsgList

Get status of all messages for user.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetMsgList( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, short MaxEntries, short FAR *lpNumEntries, ZFMSGINFO FAR *lpMsgInfo)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type - ZFDIR_OUT for sent messages, or ZFDIR_IN for received messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxEntries</td>
<td>Maximum number of entries to be returned (ie number of elements in the arrays which follow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpNumEntries</td>
<td>Address of short integer variable used to return the number of events in the file. Note that the returned value may be larger than the value given for MaxEntries if the buffer was not large enough for all entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpMsgInfo</td>
<td>Address of array of 'n' ZFMSGINFO structures, where 'n' is the value given by the MaxEntries parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets a list of the entries in the OUT or IN window list for this user, together with information about each one (current status, comment etc). If the program wants to find the status of just one message it is more efficient to call the ZfxGetMsgInfo routine.

If the number of entries in the list exceeds the MaxEntries parameter, then the routine returns information about the first MaxEntries entries, but sets the lpNumEntries parameter to the total number of entries in the list. Be careful therefore to only read the lesser of (MaxEntries) and (lpNumEntries) elements of the array on return. Calling the routine with MaxEntries set to 0 will just return a count of the number of entries.

Entries are added by selecting Send (File menu) in the Zetafax client, by calling the ZfxSendMsgEx routine, or when a new message is received. Entries are removed by selecting Save (File menu) or Delete (File menu) in the Zetafax client or calling ZfxDeleteMsg. A message may also be removed when it completes if it has the "delete on completion" option set, or for an incoming message if it is routed to another user or to an e-mail InBox.

The ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus routine should be used in conjunction with this call if repeatedly checking the status of messages, to prevent reading the INFO file unnecessarily.
NOTE - this function is supplied for compatibility with version 5 of the Zetafax API only. Version 6 API applications should use ZfxGetMsgListEx.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
- ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
- ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
#define LIST_SIZE 20
ZFMSGINFO aMsgInfo[LIST_SIZE];
Err = ZfxGetMsgList(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, LIST_SIZE, &NumEntries, aMsgInfo);

if (Err != 0)
{
    return;
}

if (NumEntries > LIST_SIZE)
{
    printf("Total messages %d\n", NumEntries);
    printf("Displaying first %d\n", LIST_SIZE);
}

for (Entry = 0; Entry < min(NumEntries, LIST_SIZE); Entry++)
{
    printf("Entry %d : %s, status %d\n", Entry, aMsgInfo[Entry].szBody, aMsgInfo[Entry].Status);
}
```

Related topics

- Alphabetical reference
- Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetMsgListEx

Get status of all messages for user.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetMsgListEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, short  MaxEntries, short FAR *lpNumEntries, short MsgInfoExSize, ZFMSGINFOEX FAR *lpMsgInfoEx)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call MsgDirMessage type - ZFDIR_OUT for sent messages, or ZFDIR_IN for received messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxEntries</td>
<td>Maximum number of entries to be returned (ie number of elements in the arrays which follow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpNumEntries</td>
<td>Address of short integer variable used to return the number of events in the file. Note that the returned value may be larger than the value given for MaxEntries if the buffer was not large enough for all entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgInfoExSize</td>
<td>Size of the ZFMSGINFOEX structure, as given by sizeof (ZFMSGINFOEX).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpMsgInfoEx</td>
<td>Address of array of 'n' ZFMSGINFOEX structures, where 'n' is the value given by the MaxEntries parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets a list of the entries in the OUT or IN window list for this user, together with information about each one (current status, comment, subject etc). If the program wants to find the status of just one message it is more efficient to call the ZfxGetMsgInfoEx routine.

If the number of entries in the list exceeds the MaxEntries parameter, then the routine returns information about the first MaxEntries entries, but sets the lpNumEntries parameter to the total number of entries in the list. Be careful therefore to only read the lesser of (MaxEntries) and (lpNumEntries) elements of the array on return. Calling the routine with MaxEntries set to 0 will just return a count of the number of entries.

Entries are added by selecting Send (File menu) in the Zetafax client, by calling the ZfxSendMsgEx routine, or when a new message is received. Entries are removed by selecting Save (File menu) or Delete (File menu) in the Zetafax client or calling ZfxDeleteMsg. A message may also be removed when it completes if it has the "delete on completion" option set, or for an incoming message if it is routed to another user or to an e-mail Inbox.

The ZfxCheckNewMsgStatus routine should be used in conjunction with this call if repeatedly checking the status of messages, to prevent reading the INFO file unnecessarily.

Return value
The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
ZFERR_NOTInicialised
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID

Example

#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
#define LIST_SIZE 20

ZFMSGINFOEX aMsgInfoEx[LIST_SIZE];
Err = ZfxGetMsgListEx(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, LIST_SIZE, &NumEntries, sizeof(ZFMSGINFOEX),
aMsgInfoEx);

if (Err != 0)
{
    return;
}
if (NumEntries > LIST_SIZE)
{
    printf("Total messages %d\n", NumEntries);
    printf("Displaying first %d\n", LIST_SIZE);
}
for (Entry = 0; Entry < min(NumEntries, LIST_SIZE); Entry++)
{
    printf("Entry %d : %s, status %d\n", Entry, MsgInfoEx[Entry].szBody, MsgInfoEx[Entry].Status);
}

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetServerStatus

Get information about the server.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetServerStatus( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, short ServerInfoSize,
ZFSERVERINFO FAR *lpServerInfo short MaxDevices, short FAR *lpNumDevices, short
DeviceInfoSize, ZFDEVICEINFO FAR *lpDeviceInfo)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call ServerInfoSize size of structure - should be set to size of (ZFSERVERINFO) lpServerInfoAddress of a ZFSERVERINFO structure used to return status information for the server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxDevices</td>
<td>Maximum number of device entries to be returned (ie number of elements in the DeviceInfo array)lpNumDevicesAddress of short integer variable used to return the number of events in the file. Note that the returned value may be larger than the value given for MaxDevices if the buffer was not large enough for all entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeviceInfoSize</td>
<td>Size of structure - should be set to sizeof (ZFDEVICEINFO)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IpDeviceInfo</td>
<td>Address of array of ‘n’ ZFDEVICEINFO structures, where ‘n’ is the value given by the MaxDevices parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets the current status of the server (number of entries in queues etc), and of each device.

If the number of devices configured exceeds the MaxDevices parameter, then the routine returns information about the first MaxDevices devices, but sets the lpNumDevices parameter to the total number of devices in the list. Be careful therefore to only read the lesser of (MaxDevices) and (lpNumDevices) elements of the array on return. Calling the routine with MaxDevices set to 0 will just return a count of the number of devices.

NOTE - this function is supplied for compatibility with version 5 of the Zetafax API only. Version 6 API applications should use ZfxGetServerStatusEx.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
ZFERR_NOT_INITIALLISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_CANT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example
```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
#define LIST_SIZE 20

ZFSERVERINFO ServerInfo;
ZFDEVICEINFO aDeviceInfo[LIST_SIZE];
Err = ZfGetServerStatus(hSession, sizeof(ZFSERVERINFO), &ServerInfo, LIST_SIZE, &NumDevices, sizeof(ZFDEVICEINFO), aDeviceInfo);

if (Err == 0)
{
    printf("Items waiting for device = %d\n", ServerInfo.QueueWaitingDevice);
    if (NumDevices >= 1 && aDeviceInfo[0].szUser[0] != '\0')
    {
        printf("First device is processing %s:%s", aDeviceInfo[0].szUser, aDeviceInfo[0].szMsgBody);
    }
}
```

**Related topics**
- [Alphabetical reference](#)
- [Function error returns and reference](#)
ZfxGetServerStatusEx

Get information about the server.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetServerStatusEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, short ServerStatusExSize,
ZFSERVERSTATUSEX FAR *lpServerStatusEx)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerStatusExSize</td>
<td>Size of structure - should be set to size of (ZFSERVERSTATUSEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpServerStatusEx</td>
<td>Address of a ZFSERVERSTATUSEX structure used to return status information for the server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine gets the current status of the server (number of entries in queues etc), of each device, and of each link to a remote server.

If the number of devices configured exceeds the lpServerStatusEx->MaxDevices parameter, then the routine returns information about the firstlpServerStatusEx->MaxDevices devices, but sets the lpServerStatusEx->lpNumDevices parameter to the total number of devices in the list. Be careful therefore to onlyread the lesserof (lpServerStatusEx->MaxDevices) and (lpServerStatusEx->lpNumDevices) elements of the array on return. Calling the routine with lpServerStatusEx->MaxDevices set to 0 will just return a count of the number of devices. The same logic also applies to the useof lpServerStatusEx->MaxLinks andlpServerStatusEx->lpNumLinks.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_CANT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example

#include  <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
#define DEV_LIST_SIZE 20
#define LINK_LIST_SIZE 30

ZFSERVERSTATUSEX ServerStatus;
ZFSERVERINFOEX ServerInfo;
ZDEVICEINFOEX aDeviceInfo[DEV_LIST_SIZE];
ZFLINKINFOEX aLinkInfo[LINK_LIST_SIZE];
short NumDevices;
short NumLinks;

/* initialise required fields */
memset(&ServerStatus, 0, sizeof(ServerStatus));
ServerStatus.ServerInfoExSize = sizeof(ZFSERVERINFOEX);
ServerStatus.lpServerInfoEx = &ServerInfo;
ServerStatus.MaxDevices = DEV_LIST_SIZE;
ServerStatus.lpNumDevices = &NumDevices;
ServerStatus.DeviceInfoExSize = sizeof(ZFDEVICEINFOEX);
ServerStatus.lpDeviceInfoEx = aDeviceInfo;
ServerStatus.MaxLinks = LINK_LIST_SIZE;
ServerStatus.lpNumLinks = &NumLinks;
ServerStatus.LinkInfoExSize = sizeof(ZFLINKINFOEX);
ServerStatus.lpLinkInfoEx = aLinkInfo;

Err = ZfxGetServerStatusEx(hSession, sizeof(ZFSERVERSTATUSEX), &ServerStatus);

if (Err == 0)
{
    printf("Items waiting for device = %d", ServerInfoEx.QueueWaitingDevice);
    if (NumDevices > 1 & aDeviceInfo[0].szUser[0] != '\0')
    {
        printf("Device 1 processing %s:%s", aDeviceInfo[0].szUser, aDeviceInfo[0].szMsgBody);
    }
    if (NumLinks > 1)
    {
        printf("%d faxes sent OK via '%s', aLinkInfo[0].NumSentOK, aLinkInfo[0].szRemoteServer);}
}

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetSystemArea

Get location of system file directory.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetSystemArea( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszBuffer, short BufLen)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBuffer</td>
<td>Address of buffer used to return the full path of the directory, including a terminating backslash () and NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufLen</td>
<td>Size of the buffer (including space for the terminating NULL).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine returns the full path name of the base directory used for storing system shared files, with a backslash added to the end (eg "S:\ZFAX\SYSTEM\"). The terminating backslash means that a valid path can be formed by appending a file name to this string. This should not normally be required by API programs.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
szPath[256];
if (ZfxGetSystemArea(hSession, szPath, sizeof(szPath)) == 0) { ... }
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
C language API

203

ZfxGetUserArea
Get location of user's base directory.

Syntax
ZFERR FAR ZfxGetUserArea( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszBuffer, short BufLen)

Parameters
Parameter

Description

hSession

API session handle, as
returned by ZfxAPIInit
calllpszBufferAddress of
buffer used to return the
full path of the directory,
including a terminating
backslash ('\') and NULL.
Size of the buffer
(including space for the
terminating NULL)

BufLen

Description
This routine returns the full path name of the user's base directory , with a backslash added to the end (eg
"S:\ZFAX\USERS\FRED\"). The terminating backslash means that a valid path can be formed by appending
a file name to this string. The directory should not normally be required by the API.

Return value
The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL

Example
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
szPath[256];
if (ZfxGetUserArea(hSession, szPath,
Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference

© 2012 Equisys plc

sizeof(szPath)) == 0) { ... }


ZfxGetUserCoversheet

Get user's default coversheet.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetUserCoversheet( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszBuffer, short BufLen)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBuffer</td>
<td>Address of buffer used to return the full path of the directory, including a terminating backslash ('') and NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufLen</td>
<td>Size of the buffer (including space for the terminating NULL)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

Each user in Zetafax can set their own default setting for the coversheet they want to use. This routine returns the name of their default coversheet, or a null string if their default setting is for no coversheet to be sent.

The routine need only be called if the program wants to perform specific processing on the coversheet name (for example, overriding it if blank), as the default will automatically be used if the "Coversheet:" line is omitted from a SUBMIT file.

The maximum length of coversheet names equal to ZFMSG_COVERSHEET_LEN (excluding space for the terminating NULL).

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

szCoversheet[ZFMSG_COVERSHEET_LEN+1];

if (ZfxGetUserCoversheet(hSession, szCoversheet, sizeof(szCoversheet)) != 0
    || szCoversheet[0] == '\0') /*if default is no coversheet */
{
    /* force a coversheet to be used */
    strcpy(szCoversheet, "COVSHEET");
}
```
Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetUserFromname

Get user's default sender name.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetUserFromname( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszBuffer, short BufLen)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lpszBufferAddress of buffer used to return the full path of the directory, including a terminating \ and NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BufLen</td>
<td>Size of the buffer (including space for the terminating NULL).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine returns the default setting for the sender name for messages submitted by this user (usually their full name). When a new user is created the sender name is set to the full name entered in the Zetafax Configuration program, but the user can then change it using the Zetafax client. Note that editing an existing user in the Setup program does not change the sender name. The routine need only be called if the program wants to perform specific processing on the name (for example, overriding it if blank), as the default will automatically be used if the "From:" line is omitted from a SUBMIT file. Sender names have a maximum length of ZFMSG_FULLNAME_LEN (excluding space for the terminating NULL).

Return Value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
szFromname[ZFMSG_FULLNAME_LEN+1];
if (ZfxGetUserFromname(hSession, szFromname, sizeof(szFromname)) != 0
    || szFromname[0] == '\0') /* if no default name set */
{
    /* force a default name */
    strcpy(szFromname, "Fax Administrator");
}
```

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxGetUserInDir

Get location of user's IN directory.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxGetUserInDir( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszBuffer, short BufLen)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBuffer</td>
<td>Address of buffer used to return the full path of the directory, including a terminating backslash (') and NULL. BufLen Size of the buffer (including space for the terminating NULL)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine returns the full path name of the user's OUT directory, with a backslash added (eg "S:\ZFAX\USERS\FRED\Z-OUT\'). The terminating backslash means that a valid path can be formed by appending a file name to this string.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZFERR_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

```c
#include  <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

szPath[256];
if (ZfxGetUserInDir(hSession, szPath, sizeof(szPath)) == 0)
{
    ...
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
**ZfxHoldMsg**

Request server to suspend processing of message.

**Syntax**

ZFERR FAR ZfxHoldMsg( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody)

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type (ZFDIR_OUT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Base name of message file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**

This routine is called to stop the server processing a message after it has been submitted using ZfxSendMsgEx. The routine sends a request to the Zetafax server, which processes it asynchronously.

Held messages remain in the queue in their original position until released or deleted. Any transmissions in progress when the hold request is received will not be interrupted, but no further preparation will take place and the message will not be submitted to any new devices for sending. Normal processing is resumed by calling the ZfxReleaseMsg function.

**Return value**

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALLY
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE
- ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
- ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

**Example**

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
if (ZfxHoldMsg(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000") == 0)
{
    printf("Message hold request sent\n");
    /* Processing not stopped until status */
    /* changes to ZFMSG_HELD */
    ...
}
```

**Related topics**

- Alphabetical reference
- Function error returns and reference

© 2012 Equisys plc
ZfxMarkMsgAsRead

Marks message as 'read' (changes the user status of the message).

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxMarkMsgAsRead( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hsession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type (ZFDIR_OUT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LpszBody</td>
<td>name of message file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine is called to mark a specified message as 'read'. It updates the user status of the message in the control files so does not need to send any requests to the Zetafax Server.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
if (ZfxMarkMsgAsRead(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000") == 0)
{
    printf("Message marked as read\n");
    /* viewing the user's message */
    /* in the client would now show */
    /* the message as being read */
    ...
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxReleaseMsg

Request server to resume processing of message.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxReleaseMsg( SESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit cal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMsgDir</td>
<td>Message type (ZFDIR_OUT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Base name of message file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine is called to resume the server processing a message that has been suspended with ZfxHoldMsg. The routine sends a request to the Zetafax server, which processes it asynchronously.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE
- ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
- ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
if (ZfxReleaseMsg(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000") == 0)
{
    printf("Message release request sent\n");
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxRestartServer

Restart the Zetafax server.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxRestartServer( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, SHORT fReserved)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fReserved</td>
<td>Reserved - set to FALSE (0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine requests the Zetafax server to restart if already running. This is equivalent to ZfxStopServer followed by ZfxStartServer, but can be called from any machine (unlike ZfxStartServer which must be called on the fax server PC).

When the server programs restart, they re-read the initialization files and settings. ZfxRestartServer can therefore be used after making changes to the server settings, such as adding or removing fax devices. Note however that restarting the server will abort any faxes currently being sent or received.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
Err = ZfxRestartServer(hSession, FALSE);
if (Err == 0)
    printf("Server restarting\n");
else
    printf("Unable to restart server\n");
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxRushMsg and ZfxRushMsgEx

Request server to stop processing message.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxRushMsg( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody)
ZFERR FAR ZfxRushMsgEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, ZFMSGDIR MsgDir, char FAR *lpszBody, char FAR *lpszMsgID)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hsession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgDir</td>
<td>Message type (ZFDIR_OUT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Base name of message file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszMsgID</td>
<td>Message ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

These routines are called to request the server rush the processing a message after it has been submitted using ZfxSendMsgEx. The routine sends a request to the Zetafax server, which processes it asynchronously.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_UNKNOWN_MESSAGE
- ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
- ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
if (ZfxRushMsg(hSession, ZFDIR_OUT, "~XSND000") == 0)
  {
      printf("Message rushed");
      /* server should now speed up the */
      /* processing of the message */
      /* now wait for status to change to */
      /* ZFMSG_OK or ZFMSG_FAILED before */
      /* deleting the message */
      ...
  }
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxSendMsg
Submit message to fax server for sending.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxSendMsg( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszBody, char FAR *lpszDataExtn, char FAR *lpszComment)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Body name of control file and data file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtn</td>
<td>Extension of data file corresponding to the data format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszComment</td>
<td>Descriptive comment (of maximum length ZFMSG_COMMENT_LENGTH). This is the comment that appears on the Zetafax client display OUT directory list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine makes an entry for a new message in the user's OUT directory INFO file then sends a message to the Zetafax server asking it to queue the message for sending.

The caller should first create two files in the users OUT directory (as given by the ZfxGetUserOutDir function). These are the control file (with extension ".CTL"), and the data file (with an extension corresponding to the data file format, as specified in File System Structure section above. The two files should have the same body name, which will usually have been determined by calling the ZfxCreateAutoFileroutine.

Note that once a message has been submitted to the fax server for processing, the server will periodically open the control file to change the status lines or append message history and status information to the file. It is recommended that application programs avoid opening the control file until the status of the message changes to ZFMSG_OK or ZFMSG_FAILED, at which point the server has completed processing of the message. However, if the program requires to read the file during this time then it must not be kept open for more than 2 seconds, otherwise status updates may be lost.

NOTE - this function is supplied for compatibility with version 5 of the Zetafax API only. Version 6 API applications should use ZfxSendMsgEx.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_Not_Initialised
ZFERR_Invalid_Parameters
ZFERR_Server_Not_RUNNING
ZFERR_File_Not_RUNNING
ZFERR_Message_Already_EXISTS
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>

/* create ~XSND000.CTL and ~XSND000.TXT */
...

if (ZfxSendMsg(hSession, "~XSND000", "TXT", "To: Sam Smith") == 0)
   printf("Submitted to Zetafax server\n");
else
   /* delete the two files */
      ...
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxSendMsgEx

Submit message to fax server for sending.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxSendMsgEx( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszDataExtn, short MsgInfoExSize, ZFMSGINFOEX lpMsgInfoEx)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszDataExtn</td>
<td>Extension of data file corresponding to the data format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MsgInfoExSize</td>
<td>Size of the ZFMSGINFOEX structure, as returned by sizeof(ZFMSGINFOEX).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpMsgInfoEx</td>
<td>Address of a single ZFMSGINFOEX structure, containing the body, comment and subject of the message to be submitted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine makes an entry for a new message in the user's OUT directory INFO file then sends a message to the Zetafax server asking it to queue the message for sending.

The caller should first create two files in the users OUT directory (as given by the ZfxGetUserOutDir function). These are the control file (with extension "_.CTL"), and the data file (with an extension corresponding to the data file format, as specified in File System Structure section above. The two files should have the same body name, which will usually have been determined by calling the ZfxCreateAutoFileroutine.

Note that once a message has been submitted to the fax server for processing, the server will periodically open the control file to change the status lines or append message history and status information to the file. It is recommended that application programs avoid opening the control file until the status of the message changes to ZFMSG_OK or ZFMSG_FAILED, at which point the server has completed processing of the message. However, if the program requires to read the file during this time then it must not be kept open for more than 2 seconds, otherwise status updates may be lost.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
ZFERR_FILE_NOT_FOUND
ZFERR_MESSAGE_ALREADY_EXISTS
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
ZFMMSGINFOEX MsgInfo;
...
/* create ~XSND000.CTL and ~XSND000.TXT */
...
if (ZfxSendMsgEx(hSession, "TXT", sizeof(ZFMMSGINFOEX), &MsgInfo) == 0)
{
    f("Submitted to Zetafax server\n");
}
else
{
    /* delete the two files */
    ...
}
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
ZfxSendSubmitFile

Send a single SUBMIT format file.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxSendSubmitFile(ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, char FAR *lpszSubmitFile, char FAR *lpszPrefix, char FAR *lpszBody)

Parameters

Parameter | Description
--- | ---
hSession | API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call
lpszSubmitFile | Name of submit file (with path if not in current directory). lpszPrefix 4 characters string giving the prefix to use when creating the control and data files.
lpszBody | Address of buffer of length ZFMSG_BODY_LEN+1 used to return the message body name if successfully submitted for sending.

Description

This routine interprets the given SUBMIT format file, creating a CONTROL file and a DATA file (in ASCII text or Epson print format). It then calls the ZfxSendMsgEx function to submit these files for sending, and if successful returns the name of the message submitted. This is the simplest method of submitting a fax using the API.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALISED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_MESSAGE_ALREADY_EXISTS
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

if ((fp = fopen("XYZ.TMP", "w+b")) != NULL) {
```

© 2012 Equisys plc
fputs("\%%[MESSAGE]\r\n", fp);  
fputs("From: Fred Smith\r\n", fp);  
fputs("To: Jim Jones\r\n", fp);  
fputs("Fax: 123 456 7890\r\n", fp);  
fputs("\%%[TEXT]\r\n", fp);  
fputs("Hello Jim\r\n", fp);  
fclose(fp);  
Err = ZfxSendSubmitFile(hSession, "XYZ.TMP", "XSUB", szBody);  
remove("XYZ.TMP");  
}  
if (Err == 0)  
{  
    printf("Submitted message %s\n", szBody);  
}  

Related topics  
Alphabetical reference  
Function error returns and reference
ZfxSendSubmitFileFP

Send a single SUBMIT format file (old version).

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxSendSubmitFileFP( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, FILE *fpSubmit, char FAR *lpszPrefix, char FAR *lpszBody)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpSubmit</td>
<td>File pointer for SUBMIT format file, opened in binary mode with read access (eg an &quot;rb&quot; parameter to the fopen call). The file pointer should be positioned at the start of the % %[MESSAGE] line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszPrefix</td>
<td>4 characters string giving the prefix to use when creating the control and data files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszBody</td>
<td>Address of buffer of length ZFMSG_BODY_LEN+1 used to return the message body name if successfully submitted for sending.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine interprets the given SUBMIT format file, creating a CONTROL file and a DATA file (in ASCII text or Epson print format). It then calls the ZfxSendMsgEx function to submit these files for sending, and if successful returns the name of the message submitted. This is the simplest method of submitting a fax using the API.

The SUBMIT file must have been opened with read access - ie if the file is created by the application program first, then it should be opened with access "w+" not just "w".

NOTE - this routine is supplied for historic reasons to assist porting applications written for an older version of the API. Because of its use of file pointers is only supported in the static library version of the API, not the DLL. New programs should use the ZfxSendSubmitFile function instead.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_MESSAGE_ALREADY_EXISTS
ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_CANT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

if ((fp = fopen("XYZ.TMP", "w+b")) != NULL)
{
    fputs("%%[MESSAGE]\r\n", fp);
    fputs("From: Fred Smith\r\n", fp);
    fputs("To: Jim Jones\r\n", fp);
    fputs("Fax: 123 456 7890\r\n", fp);
    fputs("%%[TEXT]\r\n", fp);
    fputs("Hello Jim\r\n", fp);
    fseek(fp, 0L, SEEK_SET);
    Err = ZfxSendSubmitFileFP(hSession, fp, "XSUB", szBody);
    fclose(fp);
    remove("XYZ.TMP");
}

if (Err == 0)
{
    printf("Submitted message %s\n", szBody);
}
```

Related topics

- Alphabetical reference
- Function error returns and reference
ZfxStartServer

Start the Zetafax server on this PC.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxStartServer( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, SHORT fReserved, char FAR *lpszReserved)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPIInit call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fReserved</td>
<td>Reserved - set to FALSE (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszReserved</td>
<td>Reserved - set to NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine starts the Zetafax server on the current PC. The PC must have been correctly configured to run the server. The server programs are started in turn. This routine returns once the server has begun starting, but the calling application should then use the ZfxCheckServer routine to determine when it has started.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOTInicialised
- ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
- ZFERR_SERVER_RUNNING
- ZFERR_CANNOT_RUN_SYSTEM_MANAGER
- ZFERR_ERROR_STARTING_SERVER

Example

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
Err = ZfxStartServer(hSession, FALSE, NULL);
if (Err == 0)
    printf("Server starting\n");
else
    printf("Unable to start server\n");
```

Related topics

Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
**ZfxStopServer**

Stop the Zetafax server.

**Syntax**

ZFERR FAR ZfxStopServer( ZFSESSIONHANDLE hSession, SHORT fReserved)

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hSession</td>
<td>API session handle, as returned by ZfxAPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Init call</td>
<td>fReserved - set to FALSE (0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**

This routine requests the Zetafax server to stop. Note that this will abort any faxes currently being sent or received.

**Return value**

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

- ZFERR_NOT_INITIALIZED
- ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING

**Example**

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...
Err = ZfxStopServer(hSession, FALSE);
if (Err == 0)
    printf("Server stopping\n");
else
    printf("Unable to stop server\n");
```

**Related topics**

- Alphabetical reference
- Function error returns and reference
ZfxVBSendSubmitFile

Send a single SUBMIT format file.

Syntax

ZFERR FAR ZfxVBSendSubmitFile( char FAR *lpszUsername, char FAR *lpszSubmitFile, char FAR *lpszPrefix)

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lpszUserName</td>
<td>Zetafax username to use for submitting the message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszSubmitFile</td>
<td>Full path and file name of SUBMIT format file to send.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpszPrefix</td>
<td>4 characters string giving the prefix to use when creating the control and data files.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description

This routine interprets the given SUBMIT format file, creating a CONTROL file and a DATA file (in ASCII text or Epson print format). It then calls the ZfxSendMsgEx function to submit these files for sending.

This is equivalent to calling ZfxAPIInit, ZfxSendSubmitFile and ZfxAPIClosedown. It is supplied for programs that can call functions in the DLL, but are unable to store the session handle returned by ZfxAPIInit and pass it to the other two functions - word processor macro languages and some Visual Basic applications, for example.

The ZfxAPIInit function has to do a certain amount of work to determine the system configuration and user settings, so it is more efficient when submitting multiple faxes to keep a session open (calling ZfxAPIInit once when the application starts for example) then repeatedly call ZfxSendSubmitFile. It is therefore recommended that this function is only used by programs that are unable to use ZfxSendSubmitFile.

Return value

The routine returns 0 if successful, otherwise one of the following:

ZFERR_INVALID_PARAMETERS
ZFERR_NO_ZF_INIT_FILE
ZFERR_INVALID_ZF_INIT_FILE
ZFERR_UNKNOWN_USER
ZFERR_CANNOT_LOG_ON
ZFERR_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_FILE_ERROR ZFERR_SERVER_NOT_RUNNING
ZFERR_SUBMIT_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_OPEN_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_ERROR
ZFERR_INFO_FILE_INVALID
ZFERR_CANNOT_SUBMIT_REQUEST

Example
```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <zfapi.h>
...

if ((fp = fopen("XYZ.TMP", "w+b")) != NULL)
{
    fputs("%%[MESSAGE]\r\n", fp);
    fputs("From: Fred Smith\r\n", fp);
    fputs("To: Jim Jones\r\n", fp);
    fputs("Fax: 123 456 7890\r\n", fp);
    fputs("%%[TEXT]\r\n", fp);
    fputs("Hello Jim\r\n", fp);
    fclose(fp);
    Err = ZfxVBSendSubmitFile("FRED", "XYZ.TMP", "XSUB");
    remove("XYZ.TMP");
    if (Err == 0)
    {
        printf("Submitted message\n");
    }
}
```

Related topics
Alphabetical reference
Function error returns and reference
DDE commands

Applications such as word processors may communicate with the Zetafax client program directly using DDE commands. Provided adequate details have first been given using the DDE commands, when a document is "printed" using the Zetafax Windows printer driver no dialogs will be displayed and the fax or faxes will be submitted to the Zetafax server automatically.

DDE conversation

Before issuing any addressing commands, a DDE conversation must be established between the application and the Zetafax client program. The name of the DDE server is Zetafax, and the topic for the purposes of addressing faxes is Addressing.

The Zetafax client program should be put under the control of DDE by issuing a DDEControl DDE Execute call.

Addressing commands can then be issued using DDE Poke calls. Details of the commands which may be used are given below.

A message file should be created by printing using the Zetafax Windows printer driver. Alternatively an ASCII file, or a suitable Epson or TIFF file, may be copied to the spool file location used by the Zetafax client program (usually C:\WINDOWS\ZETAFAX.SPL, set by the LogArea: entry in the ZETAFAX.INI file).

The message can be submitted to the Zetafax server for sending with a Send DDE Execute call, or for preview with a Preview DDE Execute call.

Further messages can be submitted by specifying a new addressee, organization, and fax number, creating a new message file, and then issuing a Send or Preview DDE Execute call.

**Note:** Each of the addressing settings, such as the choice of letterhead, will remain unchanged between messages until the appropriate DDE Poke call is made to alter it. If these settings need to be reset to their default values between messages, the Zetafax client program should be released from DDE control with a DDERelease DDE Execute call and then put back under DDE control with a DDEControl DDE Execute call.

After submitting the message or messages the Zetafax client program should be released from the control of DDE by issuing a DDERelease DDE Execute call.

The DDE conversation should finally be terminated properly.

Commands

The following WM_DDE_EXECUTE commands may be issued using the Addressing topic:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDEControl</td>
<td>Puts the Zetafax client program under DDE control for addressing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send</td>
<td>Submits a message to the Zetafax server for sending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preview</td>
<td>Submits a message to the Zetafax server for preview.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDERelease</td>
<td>Releases the Zetafax client from DDE control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Poke items

The following table lists the items that may be poked (WM_DDE_POKE) using the Addressing topic whilst the Zetafax client program is under DDE control on all Zetafax configurations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>fax, recipient name, organization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For a description of each command and its parameters see **SUBMIT file Message Addressing lines**.

With an API license the following additional items may be poked:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>sender name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coversheet</td>
<td>coversheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letterhead</td>
<td>letterhead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality</td>
<td>quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header</td>
<td>header</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attach</td>
<td>files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charge</td>
<td>chargecode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a full description of each command and its parameters, see **SUBMIT file Message Option lines**.

**Related topics**
- Example DDE macros
Example DDE macros

Windows 98

The following Microsoft Word macro demonstrates the use of DDE commands to submit the current document to the Zetafax server for sending by fax:

```vba
Sub MAIN
REM Set up DDE control of Zetafax
Conv1 = DDEInitiate("Zetafax", "Addressing")
DDEExecute(Conv1, ":[DDEControl]"

REM Set the addressing options
DDEPoke(Conv1, "To", "123 456 7890, Sam Smith, Smith and Sons")

REM Set Zetafax To the default printer And Print the document
FilePrintSetup .Printer = "Zetafax printer on ZETAFAK.SPL"
FilePrint

REM Submit the fax And release DDE control
DDEExecute(Conv1, ":[Send][DDERelease]"
DDETerminate(Conv1)
End Sub
```

Background printing

Please note that this macro disables the background printing feature when printing to the Zetafax printer from within a Microsoft Word macro. This is done by adding the following line:

```
ToolsOptionsPrint .Background = 0
```

You can also re-activate background printing by adding the following line to the end of your macro:

```
ToolsOptionsPrint .Background = 1
```

Windows NT

Because Windows NT uses a different naming convention for its printer ports it is necessary to adjust the macro shown above to accommodate for this. The simplest way to do this is to record a new macro where you select your Zetafax printer. In the example above, you need to change the FilePrintSetup call to specify the spool file path which would look something like:

```
FilePrintSetup .Printer = "Zetafax printer on NE00:"
```

This is best done by recording a simple macro within Word of you selecting the Zetafax printer and copying the resulting Word Basic code to your Zetafax DDE macro.

Here is an example Word for Windows macro which submits the current document to the fax server for sending by fax under Windows NT:

```vba
Sub MAIN
REM Set up DDE control of Zetafax
Conv1 = DDEInitiate("Zetafax", "Addressing")
DDEExecute(Conv1, ":[DDEControl]"

REM Set Zetafax To the default printer And Print the document
FilePrintSetup .Printer = "Zetafax printer on NE00:"
REM Disable background printing
```
ToolsOptionsPrint .Background = 0
FilePrint
REM Set the addressing options
DDEPoke(Conv1, "To", "123 456 7890, Sam Smith, Smith & Sons")
DDEPoke(Conv1, "Quality", "High")
DDEPoke(Conv1, "Time", "19:00:00")
DDEPoke(Conv1, "Attach", "infopack")
REM Submit the fax And release DDE control
DDEExecute(Conv1, "[Send][DDERelease]")
DDETerminate(Conv1)
End Sub

Microsoft Excel

In Microsoft Excel, the DDEPoke instructions do not support a constant string as data. It must be a range address. So, instead of using the line:

DDEPoke Conv1, "From", "John Doe"

The instruction should appear as:

DDEPoke Conv1, "From", WorkSheets("Sheet1").Range("A1")

Here is an example Excel macro that will submit the current document to the fax server using addressing information contained in fields within an active worksheet.

Sub Macro1()
ZetaTalk = DDEInitiate(_ app:="Zetafax",_ topic:="Addressing")
    Application.ActivePrinter = "Zetafax printer on NE00:"
    ActiveSheet.PrintOut
    DDEExecute ZetaTalk, "[DDEControl]"
Set RecipientName = WorkSheets("Sheet1").Range("A1")
Set OrgName = WorkSheets("Sheet1").Range("B1")
Set FaxNumber = WorkSheets("Sheet1").Range("C1")
Application.DDEPoke ZetaTalk, "Name", RecipientName
Application.DDEPoke ZetaTalk, "Organisation", OrgName
Application.DDEPoke ZetaTalk, "Fax", FaxNumber
Rem Submit the fax And release DDE control
    DDEExecute ZetaTalk, "[Send][DDERelease]"
    DDETerminate ZetaTalk
End Sub
Embedded Addressing

Like many fax packages, Zetafax has a Windows printer driver. Print from a Windows application, and a dialog box will pop-up asking you where the fax is to be sent. With the API this can be automated by including options such as the fax number in the document being printed. Zetafax will pick out the embedded addressing information and act upon it.

You can use embedded addressing to broadcast faxes from a database or using a word processor mailmerge so each recipient's copy will be personalised.

The Zetafax client program allows addressing instructions to be included into documents using embedded commands:

- Embedded Addressing information
- Option Commands
- Action Commands
- Using Embedded Addressing with Mail Merge

© 2012 Equisys plc
Embedded addressing information

The Zetafax client program allows addressing instructions to be embedded into documents using embedded commands.

Supported platforms

Embedded addressing is supported using the Zetafax Printer driver on the following operating systems:

- Windows XP
- Windows 2000
- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows 95/98

Embedded addressing is not currently supported on Microsoft Terminal Server, Windows Terminal Services or Citrix Metaframe environments.

Use without the API

Limited support for embedded addressing commands and DDE is standard in Zetafax. This guide gives details of all of the options available when the API toolkit is purchased for the product.

The concept

Word processor and other applications’ documents may contain commands to indicate where a fax should be sent, together with a wide range of settings such as the time of sending, priority, resolution, coversheet and letterhead to use. If these commands are used in a document, they must be typed using one of Zetafax’s own typefaces, and in the appropriate syntax - for example:

%%[Fax:123 456 7890]

When the document is “printed” using the Zetafax printer driver, the addressing commands are used by the Zetafax client program in place of the addressing dialog boxes. Provided adequate details are given, no dialog boxes will be displayed and the fax or faxes will be submitted to the fax server automatically.

Supported fonts

The Zetafax printer supports embedded addressing in Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0 and Windows 95/98. When using embedded addressing commands they can be entered into a document in any available Windows font; however the embedded addressing commands must use the appropriate syntax and appear on a line of their own. Earlier versions of Zetafax under certain operating environments required the use of Zetafax specific fonts for embedded addressing.

Related topics
Options commands
Action commands
Using embedded addressing with mail merge
Commands

Option Commands

The addressing commands are similar in syntax to entries in Submit files. They are enclosed in the special characters %%[] to distinguish them from printable text. The embedded command text does not appear on the faxes produced by Zetafax.

The following commands are available on all Zetafax configurations.

To
Fax
Name
Organisation
Send
Preview

The remaining options commands are only available if the API toolkit is licensed:

From
Coversheet
Letterhead
Quality
Priority
Time
Header
Attach
Charge
Discard
Subject
Note
Delete

Related topics
Embedding addressing information
Using embedded addressing with mail merge
To

Syntax

%%[To: fax, recipientname, organisation]

where fax is the fax number to send the fax to, recipientname is the person the fax is addressed to, and organisation is that person's company or organisation; fax, recipientname, and organisation may each appear in double quotation marks if required.

Description

Specifies the fax number to use and the details of the recipient which are put on the fax cover sheet and at the top of each page of the fax.

Example

%%[To: 123 456 7890, Sam Smith, Smith and Sons]
Name

Syntax

%%[Name: recipientname]
where recipientname is the person the fax is addressed to.

Description

A subset of and alternative to the %%[To:]; used with the %%[Fax] command.

Example

%%[Name: Sam Smith]
Fax

Syntax

%%[Fax: fax]
where fax is the fax number to send the fax to.

Description

A subset of and alternative to the %%[To:] command.

Example

%%[Fax: 123 456 7890]
Organisation

Syntax

%%[Organisation: organisation]

where organisation is the recipient's company or organisation.

Description

A subset of and alternative to the %%(To:) command; used with the %%(Fax) command.

Example

%%[Organisation: Smith and Sons]
Send

Syntax

%%[SEND]

Description

Indicates that the document being printed should be split at the foot of this page and submitted as a fax. The remaining page or pages will be treated as a separate fax or faxes.

Example

%%[Send]
Preview

Syntax

%%[Preview]

Description

Indicates that the document being printed should be split at the foot of this page and submitted as a fax for preview. The remaining page or pages will be treated as a separate fax or faxes.

Example

%%[Preview]
**From**

**Syntax**

```
%%[FROM: sendername]
```

where sendername is the originator of the fax - it may appear in double quotation marks.

**Description**

Specifies the name which is put on the fax coversheet as the sender of the fax (cf the From: field on the Zetafax addressing dialog box).

**Example**

```
%%[From: Jim Jones]
```
Coversheet

Syntax

```
%%[COVERSHEET: coversheet]
```

where coversheet is the name of the file to be used to generate a coversheet for the fax (1 to 8 characters long) or blank for no coversheet - coversheet may appear in double quotation marks.

Description

Specifies what coversheet to generate for the fax onto before sending.

Example

```
%%[Coversheet: COVSHEET]
```
Quality

Syntax

%%%%[QUALITY: quality]

where quality is one of DRAFT, NORMAL or HIGH.

Description

Specifies the resolution to be used when sending the fax, in the same way as the Resolution button on the Zetafax client sending options dialog box. For fax, DRAFT and HIGH will normally force the fax to be sent at standard (200x100 dpi) and fine (200x200 dpi) resolutions respectively, whilst NORMAL will send at whichever resolution has been specified by the system administrator in the system initialization file.

Example

%%%%[Quality: NORMAL]
Letterhead

Syntax

```
%%[LETTERHEAD: letterhead]
```

where letterhead is the name of the file to be used as the letterhead (1 to 8 characters long) or blank for no letterhead - letterhead may appear in double quotation marks.

Description

Specifies what letterhead to merge the fax onto before sending.

Example

```
%%[Letterhead: LETTERHEAD]
```
Priority

Syntax

%%%[PRIORITY: priority]

where priority is one of URGENT, NORMAL or BACKGROUND.

Description

Specifies the priority to be used when queuing the fax, in the same way as the Priority radio button on the Zetafax client sending options dialog box.

Example

%%%[Priority: NORMAL]
Time

Syntax

%%[AFTER: time] or %%[TIME: time]

where time specifies the earliest time that the message should be sent, for deferred sending. The format of the time field may be one of the following: hh:mm:ss (given time today) yy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss (date and time specified) OFFPEAK (as defined in SETUP.INI) If the time field is omitted the message is queued for sending immediately.

Description

Specifies when the message is to be sent.

Example

%%[After: 99-03-01 18:00:00]
Header

Syntax

%%[HEADER: header] where header is one or more of No, To, Fr, Dt and Ti.

Description

Specifies the header to appear at the top of each page of the fax, in the same way as the Header radio button on the Zetafax client sending options dialog box. No page numbering (n/N) To name of recipient Fr name of sender Da date Ti time

Example

%%[Header: NoToFrDt]
Attach

Syntax

%%[ATTACH: files]

where files is a comma separated list of graphics files to attach to the fax.

Description

Specifies the attachment files in the user's private graphics directory (Z-GRAPH) or in the system graphics directory, in the same way as the Attach radio button on the Zetafax client sending options dialog box.

Example

%%[Attach: INFOPACK, PRICES]
Charge

Syntax

%%%[CHARGE: chargecode]

where chargecode is the charge code to be used for the fax

Description

Specifies the charge code to be used when queuing the fax, in the same way as the Charge combo box on the Zetafax client addressing dialog box.

Example

%%%[Charge: SALES]
Discard

Syntax

%%[DISCARD]

Description

Specifies that this page will not be faxed. This command allows you to put all the embedded addressing commands on to one page and not have to worry about upsetting the formatting of the actual fax. Please note that this is not be available on Windows 95/98.

Example

%%[Discard]
Subject

Syntax

%%\[SUBJECT: subjectline\]

where subjectline is the subject of the fax.

Description

Specifies the subject field for the fax which can appear on the coversheet.

Example

%%[Subject: About the new sales figures]
Note

Syntax

%%[NOTE: notetext] where notetext is the text to appear in the coversheet note field.

Description

Specifies the note field text that can appear on the coversheet.

Example

%%[Note: Please find attached the price list]
Delete

Syntax

%%[DELETE: delete] where delete is YES, OK or NO.

Description

Specifies whether the fax should be deleted after sending. If delete is YES then the faxes are deleted after they have been sent (successful or failed). If delete is OK then the faxes are deleted after they have been sent successfully. If delete is NO then the faxes are not deleted after they have been sent (a blank line is equivalent).

Example

%%[Delete: YES]
Using embedded addressing with mail merge

Mail merge is used most frequently for merging mailing address details to a standard letter in order to send personalized copies to a list of recipients. The resulting documents are then printed to a network paper printer on company letterhead and mailed to the recipient. The embedded addressing feature of the Zetafax API can be used to send faxes to multiple recipients from a list generated by a contact manager or database.

Using Zetafax

In the same way, the addressing data fields can be replaced with fax addressing information by inserting mail merge fields in your word processing template enclosed within the Zetafax embedded addressing syntax. The addressing information is inserted when the mail merge is performed and instead of printing to a network paper printer, simply printing to the Zetafax printer renders the fax to the queue at the Zetafax server. At this stage, you can also tell Zetafax to overlay the document to your company's letterhead. For example, a section in a Microsoft Word template may look something like:
%%[TO: <<FaxNumber>>, <<FullName>>, <<Organization>>]

**FAX MESSAGE**

Date:    %%[DATE]  
To:      %%[NAME]  
Company: %%[ORGANISATION]  
From:    %%[FROM]  
Pages:   %%[PAGES] (including this one)  

If you do not receive all of this message please contact the sender on (770) 123-4000

Dear <<Salutation>>,

In the past you asked us to send you information about Zetafax, so I thought you would be interested in hearing about the new features and improvements we've included in Zetafax.
The ZSUBMIT program

The ZSUBMIT program is a part of the API toolkit which lets DOS, mini and mainframe programs send faxes and text messages by creating text files in a shared directory on a file server. For example, faxing purchase orders or invoices usually only requires adjusting an accounts packages report writer. A text file needs a few lines added to give the fax/mobile number and message options. Logos and signatures can be included and the text may be merged onto a multi-page form using the letterhead feature in Zetafax. This approach gives results rapidly.

This section introduces and explains in depth the format of submit files required by the ZSUBMIT program. Typically, this section can be used as a reference for both users of ZSUBMIT and the COM and C language APIs. Finally, there are some example SUBMIT files giving instances of its use.

Creating SUBMIT files
SUBMIT file Message Option lines
SUBMIT file Message Addressing lines
SUBMIT file Message Text commands
Action commands
Example SUBMIT files
Sending SMS messages
Example SMS SUBMIT files Submitting SUBMIT files Sending ASCII text files as messages
Creating SUBMIT files

One of the API methods of submitting messages for sending is to create a file in a specific format, termed SUBMIT file format. This is an ASCII text file that usually contains details of the options to use in preparing the message, the recipients of the message, as well as the message text itself. ZSUBMIT files have the .sub file extension.

ZSUBMIT program

The message may then be sent using the ZSUBMIT program. This program may be installed to run continuously as one of the Zetafax server programs, regularly checking a particular directory for the existence of a SUBMIT format file. If one is found then it is interpreted and submitted to the Zetafax server for sending - its progress may then be monitored using the client program as normal.

The ZSUBMIT program submits all messages as a given Zetafax user, and if required will monitor progress of the messages, limiting the number of outstanding messages at any one time or removing any entries which have been sent without errors. Files for sending via the ZSUBMIT program may also contain more than one message for sending - the program will split it into separate messages before submitting it to the server.

Use with API calls

SUBMIT format files are also used by the Application Programmers Interface (API) routines to specify message options and text for sending. These routines allow user written application programs to send messages directly without using either the client or ZSUBMIT program. The ZSUBMIT program itself is written using these routines, and requires the API toolkit license to run.

SUBMIT file format

This section details the format of SUBMIT files, for use with both the ZSUBMIT program and with the API routines. It gives the structure and fields allowed in the file for specifying message options and recipients, and also for formatting the message text.

The SUBMIT file is a standard ASCII text file (multiple lines, each terminated with CR LF). The file contains information about the options to be used in preparing a given message, the recipients, and the message text itself. The format is:

```plaintext
%%[MESSAGE]
Message option lines
Message addressing lines

%%[TEXT]
Text including message text fields
```

To specify a separate file containing the message to be sent (e.g. to send a graphics file):

```plaintext
%%[MESSAGE]
Message option lines
Message addressing lines

%%[FILE]
Filename, including path
```

Note: The first line of the file must be "%%[MESSAGE]".

The section headings ("%%[MESSAGE]" and "%%[TEXT]" or "%%[FILE]"), all message option and
addressing lines, and the filename (if the second form is used) must start at the left of the line (i.e. there must be no spaces preceding them). Finally, tab characters should not be used in the file - they will be replaced with a space character.

**Multiple messages**

Files submitted using the ZSUBMIT program may contain information about one or more messages by simply concatenating the files (i.e. the %%[MESSAGE] section for the second message follows the end of the %%[TEXT] or %%[FILE] sections for the first message, etc.). The ZSUBMIT program splits the file into separate messages before submitting them to the server.

**Multiple message files**

The Zetafax server also supports the sending of multiple message files specified within a SUBMIT file. When a message file is specified in the %%[FILE] section, typically ~SEND000.G3F, .EPN or .TXT in the OUT directory, the Zetafax server will scan for matching files with extension .001, .002 and append these files to the fax message. Additionally, SUBMIT files can also contain more than one %%[TEXT] or %%[FILE] sections, and both ZSUBMIT and the API library functions will generate a series of message files using the new .001 naming convention.

**Use with COM and C libraries**

SUBMIT files used with the API functions may only contain information for a single message - everything from the first %%[TEXT] command to the end of the file is treated as message text. Certain of the functions only look at one of the two sections - in this case the other section may of course be omitted.
SUBMIT file Message Option lines

These lines appear at the start of the %%[MESSAGE] section, before the addressing lines (i.e. before the first "To:" line). If omitted, all the lines (except the "Comment:", "Attach" and "Charge" lines) default to the values specified for the given user. For files submitted by programs using the API functions, this is the user specified in the ZfxAPIInit call. For files submitted using the ZSUBMIT program, it is the user specified in the User: line, either in the %%[MESSAGE] section (if given), or in the SETUP.INI file.
After

Syntax

AFTER: time

where time specifies the earliest time that the message should be sent, for deferred sending. The format of the time field may be one of the following:

yy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss (date and time specified)
OFFPEAK (as defined in SETUP.INI)

If the time field is omitted the message is queued for sending immediately.

Description

Specifies when the message is to be sent.

Example

After: 02-07-31 18:00:00
Attach

Syntax

ATTACH: files

where files is a comma separated list of graphics files to attach to the fax.

Description

Specifies the attachment files in the user's private graphics directory (Z-GRAPH) or in the system graphics directory. These are added to the end of the fax before sending. A maximum of 30 files may be specified.

Example

Attach: INFOPACK, PRICES
Charge

Syntax

CHARGE: chargecode

where chargecode specifies the charge code to use for this message, and may be any text.

Description

Specifies the charge code to use for this message. Charge codes are stored in the Zetafax billing log when the message completes, and may be used for charging the message to a particular department or client.

Example

Charge: Sales Dept
Comment

Syntax

COMMENT: comment

where comment is the message description (up to 40 characters long).

Description

Specifies the message description as displayed on the right of the client OUT window. If this line is omitted a message description detailing the first addressee is used.

Example

Comment: Smith and Co January invoice
Coversheet

Syntax

COVERSHEET: coversheet

where coversheet is the name of the file to be used to generate a coversheet for the fax (1 to 8 characters long) or blank for no coversheet.

Description

Specifies what coversheet to generate for the fax onto before sending.

Example

Coversheet: COVSHEET
**Covertext**

**Syntax**

COVERTEXT: covertext

where covertext is the next line of covernote text to be added to the coversheet.

**Purpose**

specifies the text to be added to the coversheet selected in the "COVERSHEET:" message option line. This line can be repeated as many times as required, though all of the COVERTEXT: lines must be together and as they are message options they must occur before the first "To:" line. Zetafax only uses the number of COVERTEXT: lines defined in the coversheet - if the coversheet contains ten "%%[NOTE]" fields, and the submit file has twelve COVERTEXT: lines, the last two COVERTEXT: lines will be ignored.

**Example**

COVERTEXT: Here is the price list as promised.
COVERTEXT: Please call if you have any queries.
COVERTEXT: Regards,
COVERTEXT: Sam Smith
Delete

Syntax

DELETE: delete

where delete  is either "YES" or "OK".

Purpose

Specifies whether the server should delete a message from the OUT directory after it has completed. If set to "OK" the message will only be deleted if sent successfully, while setting it to "YES" causes it to be deleted on completion whether successful or not.

Example

Delete: YES
Format

Syntax

FORMAT: format

where format specifies the file format of the data file to be sent. The possible values of the format field (together with the data type and the associated data file extensions) are:

- ASCII (ASCII text, unformatted - TXT)
- EPSON (Epson FX or LQ print spool file - EPN)
- TIFF-NORMAL (200x100 dpi TIFF fax file - G3N)
- TIFF-FINE (200x200 dpi TIFF fax file - G3F)

Description

Specifies what format the data file is in. In a standard SUBMIT file (containing a %%%[TEXT] section) the format should be "EPSON" or "ASCII". Epson should be used if the message text contains any "%%%" formatting commands (e.g. "%%%[BOLD:ON]"%). If however the message text just contains ASCII text then the format should be specified as "ASCII" (or the line omitted), in which case the result will be the same as using the client to send an ASCII text file.

Example

FORMAT: EPSON
From

Syntax

FROM: sendername

where sendername is the originator of the message.

Description

Specifies the name that is put on the fax cover sheet as the sender of the fax (cf the From: field on the Zetafax addressing dialog).

Example

From: Sam Smith
Header

Syntax

HEADER: header

where header is one or more of No, To, Fr, Da and Ti (with no separating spaces), as follows:

No: Page numbering (n/N)
To: Name of recipient
Fr: Name of sender
Dt: Date
Ti: Time

Description

Specifies the format of the header line to appear at the top of each page of the fax.

Example

Header: NoToFrDa
Hold

Syntax

HOLD: hold

where hold is either "YES" or "NO".

Description

Specifies whether the message will be held once it is in the queue, meaning that it will not be sent until the user releases it, using the Zetafax client Release command (File Menu). This gives a similar effect to the Hold for preview before sending check box on the Zetafax client addressing dialog, allowing the fax to be checked on screen before sending.

Example

Hold: YES
Letterhead

Syntax

LETTERHEAD: letterhead

where letterhead is the name of the file to be used as the letterhead (1 to 8 characters long) or blank for no letterhead

Description

Specifies what letterhead to merge the fax onto before sending.

Example

Letterhead: LETTHEAD
Preview

Syntax

PREVIEW: preview

where preview is either "YES" or "NO".

Description

Specifies whether a preview file is to be prepared for this message. This is a copy of the fax prepared for the first recipient, which can be viewed using the View (File menu) option on the Zetafax client. The default setting is "YES", but if disk space is limited and there is no requirement to view the faxes from a client then this parameter may be set to "NO".

Note: To preview the fax on the Zetafax client before it is sent (in a similar way to the Hold for preview before sending check box on the Zetafax client addressing dialog) you should set this option to "YES" (the default), and also set the Hold: message option (qv).

Example

Preview: NO
Priority

Syntax

PRIORITY: priority

where priority is one of "URGENT", "NORMAL" or "BACKGROUND".

Description

Specifies the priority to be used when queuing the message, in the same way as the Priority radio button on the client sending options dialog.

Example

Priority: NORMAL
Quality

Syntax

QUALITY: quality

where quality is one of "DRAFT", "NORMAL" or "HIGH".

Description

Specifies the resolution to be used when sending the fax, in the same way as the Resolution button on the client sending options dialog. For fax, "DRAFT" and "HIGH" will normally force the fax to be sent at standard (200x100 dpi) and fine (200x200 dpi) resolutions respectively, whilst "NORMAL" will send at whichever resolution has been specified by the system administrator in the system initialization file.

Example

Quality: NORMAL
Subject

Syntax

SUBJECT: subject

where subject is the message subject (up to 60 characters long).

Description

Specifies the message subject, as displayed on the right of the client OUT window. If a coversheet is being sent, the subject line will be included on the coversheet.

Example

Subject: Smith and Co January invoice
**User name**

**Syntax**

USER: username

where username specifies a valid Zetafax user name.

**Description**

Specifies the Zetafax user submitting this file. The command may be omitted if the default user name specified in the [ZSUBMIT] section in the SETUP.INI initialization file was not blank, or if submitting using the API COM or C language functions.

**Note** - this command can only be used in files submitted using the ZSUBMIT program (rather than using the API "C" function calls, where the name is specified in the ZfxAPIInit function). The ZSUBMIT program can be configured to disable this command, if desired for permissions or security reasons.

**Example**

User: JSMITH
SUBMIT file Message Addressing lines

These lines appear in the %MESSAGE% section, after the message options lines detailed in the SUBMIT file Message Option lines topic.

**Note:** A "To:" line must be first line specified (after the last message option line), before any other message addressing lines. The lines may be repeated if the message is to be sent to more than one person, with each repeated set starting with a "To:" line.

Fax
SMS
Field
User name
Organisation
To
Fax

Syntax

FAX: number

where number is the fax telephone number (cf the Zetafax address book editor fax number field).

Description

Specifies the fax number to send the fax to. If the number is unknown at the time of creating the file the number can be omitted. The Zetafax server will reject the send to that recipient, and the message can be resubmitted manually entering the fax number as required.

Default

None - mandatory field (unless LAN: or SMS: line is specified - see below).

Example

Fax: 456 789 0123
SMS

Syntax

SMS: number

where number is the mobile telephone number of the recipient.

Description

Specifies the mobile telephone number to send the message to. SMS messages are submitted via an SMS center on the mobile network. The telephone number for the message center is configured in the Devices section of the Zetafax Configuration program and it is not necessary to specify it in the SUBMIT file.

Default

None - mandatory field (unless LAN: or FAX: line is specified - see below).

Example

SMS: 456 789 0123
Field

Syntax

FIELD: fieldname text

where fieldname is a single word (i.e. without any spaces) giving the name of a Embedded Command field, and text is the string which will be substituted for the field.

Description

Embedded Command fields are identified in a document by the string "%%[fieldname]" (without the double quotes). When the fax is prepared for sending these fields are replaced with the text given, allowing faxes to multiple addressees to be personalized, for example. Multiple FIELD lines may be specified.

Note: The Field lines are not retained if a message is resubmitted using the Zetafax client program (for example, to correct a fax number).

The following field names are reserved, and should not be used with this command:

- COVERTEXT
- ORGANISATION
- DATE
- PAGE
- FONT
- PAGES
- FROM
- PORTRAIT
- LANDSCAPE
- SUBJECT
- NAME
- TIME
- NOTES

Default

None - any fields not specified are treated as blank.

Example

Field: Department Sales and Marketing
User name

Syntax

LAN: username

where username is the Zetafax username of the person to be sent to.

Description

Specifies the name of the Zetafax user for messages which are to be sent across the LAN (appearing in the user's IN window). This can be useful when testing applications to check the appearance of faxes to be sent without actually sending them to the remote user, in the same way as one might use Preview from the client.

Default

None - used as an alternative to the Fax: line.

Example

LAN: Fsmith
Organisation

Syntax

ORGANISATION: organisation

where organisation is the name of the company or organisation to which the fax recipient belongs.

Description

The organisation name is used on the coversheet of fax messages.

Default

Blank.

Example

Organisation: Smith and Sons Limited
To

Syntax

TO: name

where name is the name of the person to whom the message is to be sent.

Description

Specifies a recipient of the fax (cf the Coversheet Name field in the Zetafax address book). This name is used on the coversheet of the fax, on the header line of the fax, and also in the comment on the right hand side of the OUT window in the client display, Unless overridden by the comment message options line.

Default

None - mandatory line.

Example

To: Sam Smith
SUBMIT file Message Text commands

These commands appear in the %%[TEXT] section and may be freely interspersed with the message text.

See the Embedded Command description in SUBMIT file Message Addressing lines for details about what to do if you need to include the characters "%%[" in the message, without them being treated as a command.

Append
Bold
Date
Down
Field name
Font
Insert
Landscape
Left margin
Page
Portrait
Right
Time
Underline
Append

Syntax

%%[APPEND:file]

where file is the base name of a graphics file in the Z-GRAPH directory.

Description

Appends a graphics image (e.g. a scanned information sheet) to the end of the message (similar to the Zetafax client Attach option). Up to 30 of these commands may be entered, and the named files will be added to the end of the message as new pages. This command can also be used in separate ASCII format files specified using the %%[FILE] option.

Example

%%[Append:INFOPAGE]
**Bold**

**Syntax**

```
%%[BOLD:state]
```

where `state` is either "ON" or "OFF".

**Description**

The `%BOLD:ON` command causes all characters following to be printed in bold within the fax message until either a `%BOLD:OFF` command is encountered or the end of the `%TEXT` section is reached.

**Example**

```
%%[Bold:ON]
```
Date

Syntax

%%[DATE]

Description

Inserts the date when the message is prepared for sending, in the format "31st August 2005". This command can also be used in separate ASCII format files specified using the %%[FILE] option.

Example

%%[Date]
Down

Syntax

%%[DOWN:distance]

where distance is the number of units to move down the page from the current position. A unit is approximately 1/100th of an inch.

Description

This command moves down the page a given distance and may be used, for example, to position the top line of text to fit within a merged form.

Note: The first line of text prints approximately 0.7 inches below the top of the page.

Example

%%[Down:100]
**Field name**

**Syntax**

```text
%%[fieldname]
```

where `fieldname` is the name of an Embedded Command.

**Description**

Inserts the text for the given field for that addressee. The following fieldnames are defined for all messages submitted using the API or ZSUBMIT program:

- FROM
- NAME
- ORGANISATION

Other fields are only defined if they have been specified using the Field: message addressing line (see SUBMIT file Message Addressing lines). This command can also be used in separate ASCII format files specified using the `%%[FILE]` option.

**Example**

```text
%%[Organisation]
```
Font

Syntax

```
%%[FONT:font{,size}{,B}{,I}]
```

where `font` is the font required, and is any TrueType font available on the Zetafax server. Alternatively, for compatibility with previous versions, one of "ROMAN10", "ROMAN12", "ROMAN20", "ROMAN5", "ROMAN6" or "ROMANPS" gives 10cpi, 12cpi, 20cpi, 5cpi and 6cpi fixed space fonts, and proportional spaced font respectively.

Description

This command is used to set the font to be used for the remainder of that message (i.e. until the end of the %%[TEXT] section).

Example

```
%%[Font:Arial,10]
```
Insert

Syntax

%%[INSERT:file]

where file is the base name of a graphics file in the Z-GRAPH directory.

Description

Inserts a single page graphics image (e.g. a signature) at the current position on the page. The image is merged into the faxed document - you must leave enough lines following the command blank if you wish to avoid the image overprinting the following text. This command can also be used in separate ASCII format files specified using the %%[FILE] option.

Example

%%[Insert:ABCLOGO]
Landscape

Syntax

%%[LANDSCAPE]

Description

This command causes the text which follows (until a %%[PORTRAIT] command or the end of this message, whichever comes first) to be printed in landscape orientation. The command must come before any other text - i.e. at the start of the first line following the %%[MESSAGE] command, or immediately after a %%[PAGE] command (on the same line). This command can also be used in separate ASCII format files specified using the %%[FILE] option.

Example

%%[Landscape]
Left margin

Syntax

%%[LMARGIN:width]

where width is the size of the left hand margin in character widths. The width of each character is dependent upon the font being used.

Description

This command is used to set the left margin for the remainder of that message (i.e. until the end of the % TEXT section). It should be placed at the start of a line.

Note: The margin width excludes a strip of width 0.5 inches at the left of the page which may not be used (i.e. a value of 0 would set the left hand margin 0.5 inches from the left of the page).

Example

%%[LMargin:200]
Page

Syntax

%%[PAGE]

Description

This command is used to start a new page.

Example

%%[Page]
**Portrait**

**Syntax**

```
%%[PORTRAIT]
```

**Description**

This command cancels a previous `%%[LANDSCAPE]` command, reverting to portrait orientation. The command must come before any other text - i.e. at the start of the first line following the `%%[MESSAGE]` command, or immediately after a `%%[PAGE]` command (on the same line).

**Note:** The margin settings following a `%%[PORTRAIT]` command are different from the defaults for ASCII files, allowing slightly more of the page to be printed. This can be useful when overprinting forms, for example. This command can also be used in separate ASCII format files specified using the `%%[FILE]` option.

**Example**

```
%%[Portrait]
```
Right

Syntax

%%[RIGHT:distance]

where distance is the number of units to the right from the current position. A unit is approximately 1/100th of an inch.

Description

This command moves across the page to the right a given distance and may be used, for example, to position a word precisely within a form.

Example

%%[Right:100]
Time

Syntax

%%[TIME]

Description

Inserts the time when the message is prepared for sending, using a 24 hour clock, in the format "12:34". This command can also be used in separate ASCII format files specified using the %%[FILE] option.

Example

%%[Time]
Underline

Syntax

%%%UNDERLINE:state

where state is either "ON" or "OFF".

Description

The %%%UNDERLINE:ON command causes all characters following to be printed underlined until either a % %%%UNDERLINE:OFF command is encountered or the end of the %%%TEXT section is reached.

Example

%%%Underline:ON
Action commands

These remaining commands may be used within a document to split it into a number of faxes.

Send
Preview
Send

Syntax

%%[Send]

Description

Indicates that the document being printed should be split at the foot of this page and submitted as a fax. The remaining page or pages will be treated as a separate fax or faxes.

Example

%%[Send]
Preview

Syntax

%%[Preview]

Description

Indicates that the document being printed should be split at the foot of this page and submitted as a fax for preview. The remaining page or pages will be treated as a separate fax or faxes.

Example

%%[Preview]
Example fax SUBMIT files

Simple message

%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
From: Jim Jones
To: Sam Smith
Organisation: Smith and Sons
Fax: 456 789 0123

%%[TEXT]
Dear Sam Here's a short fax produced automatically Yours, Jim

Multiple messages

%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
From: Jim Jones
To: Sam Smith
Organisation: Smith and Sons
Fax: 456 789 0123
%%[TEXT]
Hello Sam!

%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
From: Jim Jones
Coversheet: COVSHEET
To: Alan Ayton
Fax: 456 789 0123
%%[TEXT]
Hello Alan!

Multiple addressees

%%[MESSAGE]
User: SSMITH
From: Sam Smith
Coversheet: COVSHEET
Letterhead: LETHEAD
To: Sam Smith
Organisation: Smith and Sons
Fax: 456 789 0123

To: Jim Jones
Organisation: Jones Brothers
Fax: 123 456 7890
%%[TEXT]
Don't forget the steering group meeting this evening Sam

Multiple message files

%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
From: Jim Jones
To: Sam Smith
Here are the brochure and price list I promised to send. I've included the general brochure as I thought this would be more helpful.

C:\Program Files\Zetafax Server\SERVER\Z-TEMP\BROCHURE.G3F

C:\Program Files\Zetafax Server\SERVER\Z-TEMP\PRICES.G3F

Please call me if you have any other questions.

Text formatting

User: JJONES
From: Jim Jones
Coversheet: COVSHEET
Letterhead: LETTHEAD
Syntax EPSON
To: Sam Smith
Organisation: Smith and Sons
Fax: 456 789 0123

Dear Jim Here's a short fax produced automatically. This is the second page. Now to end the letter with a signature added using the standard "insert graphics" command. Yours Jim Jones
Sending SMS messages

The Zetafax server is capable of submitting Short Message Service (SMS) or text messages to mobile devices using the commands specified below. SMS messages are submitted via an SMS center before being delivered to the mobile device.

SMS messages are limited to 160 characters per short message. Longer messages can be sent using Zetafax, the Zetafax server handles longer SMS messages by breaking one long message into several smaller messages. Preferences for handling longer messages can be modified in the Zetafax Configuration program under the Devices note for each SMS device you have configured.

Message commands

SMS messages can handle message text only, and cannot be used to send graphics files or other file formats. As a result, several Message Option and Message Text commands that can be used to create fax messages are not relevant when sending SMS messages. It is also important to include "Coversheet: ".

This denotes that you do not wish to use a coversheet which are not supported by SMS messages.

The following is a list of Message Option commands that are supported when sending SMS messages. For a detailed description of each command, refer to SUBMIT file Message Option lines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>Specifies the earliest time that the message should be sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charge</td>
<td>Specifies a charge code to use for a message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Specifies the message description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Specifies whether the Zetafax server should delete the message from the OUT directory after it has completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format</td>
<td>Specifies what format the data file is in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold</td>
<td>Specifies whether the message will be held once it in the queue, meaning that it will not be sent until the user releases it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Specifies the priority to be used when queuing the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>Specifies the message subject, as displayed in the client OUT window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>Specifies the Zetafax user submitting this file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following Message Option commands are not applicable and are therefore not supported when sending SMS messages using ZSUBMIT:

- ATTACH,
- COVERSHEET,
- COVERTEXT,
- FAX,
- FIELD,
- FROM,
- HEADER,
- LAN,
- LETTERHEAD,
- ORGANISATION,
- PREVIEW,
- QUALITY.

The following Message Text commands are not supported when submitting SMS messages using ZSUBMIT:

- %%[APPEND],
- %%[BOLD],
- %%[DOWN],
- %%[FONT],
- %%[INSERT],
• %*[LANDSCAPE],
• %*[LMARGIN],
• %*[PAGE],
• %*[PORTRAIT],
• %*[RIGHT],
• %*[UNDERLINE].
Example SMS SUBMIT files

Simple message

```
%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
Coversheet:
To: Sam Smith
SMS: 456 789 0123

%%[TEXT]
Dear Sam
Here's a short SMS message produced automatically
Yours, Jim
```

Multiple messages

```
%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
Coversheet:
To: Sam Smith
SMS: 456 789 0123

%%[TEXT]
Hello Sam!

%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
Coversheet:
To: Alan Ayton
SMS: 123 456 7890

%%[TEXT]
Hello Alan!
```

Multiple addressees

```
%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
Coversheet:
To: Sam Smith
SMS: 456 789 0123
Coversheet:
To: Alan Ayton
SMS: 123 456 7890

%%[TEXT]
Don't forget the steering group meeting this evening Sam
```

Multiple message files

```
%%[MESSAGE]
User: JJONES
Coversheet:
To: Sam Smith
SMS: 456 789 0123
```
Here's the price list I promised to send to you.

C:\Program Files\Zetafax Server\SERVER\Z-TEMP\PRICES.TXT
C:\Program Files\Zetafax Server\SERVER\Z-TEMP\BUSCARD.TXT

Please call me if you have any questions.
Submitting SUBMIT files

When using the ZSUBMIT program, files in SUBMIT file format may be submitted by simply copying them to a file in the specified directory with the extension "SUB". If the file contains more than one "%% MESSAGE" section (i.e. contains more than one message to be sent) then it is first split up by the program into separate message files in the polling directory, named ~ZSUBnnn.SUB, where "nnn" is a unique number for each file. Each file is then interpreted separately and submitted to the server for sending.

Syntax errors

If an error is found in the format of one of the files (e.g. an invalid or missing line in the message options), an error message is logged giving the problem and file name, and the file extension is changed to "ERR"; otherwise the file is deleted once it has been separated (in the case of multiple message files) or submitted successfully. This directory should be checked if submit errors occur to identify the problem then delete the "ERR" file - performance of the program will be affected if the number of files in the directory is allowed to become very large.

Automatic deletion

ZSUBMIT deletes SUBMIT files automatically once they have been processed and submitted to the Zetafax server. It will also delete matching files with extensions .001, .002 etc., continuing until it does not find the next file in sequence. This makes it simple to submit messages comprising multiple files, without having to tidy up manually.

Conversely, if a file is used by more than one SUBMIT file, it should not be given an extension of .001.

File creation

It is important to ensure that the submit file is complete (and any files it references exist), from the moment when the ZSUBMIT program might try and read it.

The ZSUBMIT program will behave correctly if the .SUB file is locked, retrying until it can access the file; however this can still give inaccurate results with some applications. With some programs, the file can be accessed and is "readable" even while it is being created, whilst others can create a zero length file first before reopening it to write the data. The symptom is occasional failures when ZSUBMIT tries to read the file at the precise moment it is being created.

The best and recommended approach is to create the file with a different extension e.g. .NEW and rename it to .SUB only when it is complete.

© 2012 Equisys plc
Server settings options for sending ASCII text files as messages

You can set up Zetafax to send ASCII text files as messages in the Server settings options of the Zetafax Configuration program. These options are used if a text file is sent directly using the Zetafax Client File Send option, rather than printed from a word processor (using the Zetafax printer driver).

- To display this dialog, double-click Sending ASCII text files in Server settings, or select the Text files icon from the Zetafax - configuration options dialog.

**Top margin**
Range 0 - 15 lines.

Specifies the number of blank text lines at the top of the fax page when preparing an ASCII text file for sending.

**Bottom margin**
Range 0 - 15 lines.

Specifies the number of blank text lines at the bottom of the fax page when preparing an ASCII text file for sending.

**Page length**
Range 35 - 100 lines.

Specifies the number of text lines per page (including the top and bottom margins) when preparing an ASCII text file for sending. A value of 72 gives approximately an A4 page.

**OK**

Save any changes that have been made to the ASCII text files configuration, and exit the Zetafax - configuration options dialog.

**Cancel**

Do not save changes made to the ASCII text files configuration, and exit the Zetafax - configuration options dialog.

**Reset**

Reset the ASCII text files configuration to its default settings. The settings are not saved until either OK is clicked or another category icon is selected from the scroll (left). If you use the scrolling icons on the left to move to another Category, any changes made to the ASCII text files configuration are saved.
Index

- A -

API configuration 14

- C -

C Language API 135
  Converting from older versions 138
  Function error returns and reference 155
  Function overview 140
  Message defaults 148
  Message information 142
  Message transmission history 145
  Server and device status 150
CAPI alphabetical reference 158
  user_error 160
  ZxAbortMsg 161
  ZxAPIClosedown 162
  ZxAPIInit 163
  ZxCheckNewMsgStatus 165
  ZxCheckServer 167
  ZxCreateAutoFile 168
  ZxCreateCtlFile 170
  ZxCreateCtlFileEx 172
  ZxCreateCtlFileFP 174
  ZxCreateDataFile 176
  ZxCreateDataFileFP 177
  ZxDeleteMsg 179
  ZxGetAPIVersion 181
  ZxGetMsgDefaultsEx 183
  ZxGetMsgHistory 184
  ZxGetMsgHistoryEx 187
  ZxGetMsgInfo 190
  ZxGetMsgInfoEx 192
  ZxGetMsgList 194
  ZxGetMsgListEx 196
  ZxGetServerStatus 198
  ZxGetServerStatusEx 200
  ZxGetSystemArea 202
  ZxGetUserArea 203
  ZxGetUserCoversheet 204
  ZxGetUserFromname 206
  ZxGetUserInDir 208

  ZxHoldMsg 209
  ZxMarkMsgAsRead 210
  ZxReleaseMsg 211
  ZxRestartServer 212
  ZxRushMsg 213
  ZxSendMsg 215
  ZxSendMsgEx 217
  ZxSendSubmitFile 219
  ZxSendSubmitFileFP 221
  ZxStartServer 223
  ZxStopServer 224
  ZxVBSendSubmitFile 225

COM API 23, 34, 118
  Change History 133
  Errors 32
  Overview 24
  ZiLib APIPrint 36
  ZiLib APIPrint.CancelPrint 37
  ZiLib APIPrint.FileName 37
  ZiLib APIPrint.IsComplete 37
  ZiLib APIPrint.StartPrint 38
  ZiLib Attachment 38
  ZiLib Attachment.Delete 39
  ZiLib Attachment.Name 39
  ZiLib Attachments 39
  ZiLib Attachments.Add 40
  ZiLib Attachments.Count 41
  ZiLib Attachments.Item 41
  ZiLib Coversheet 41
  ZiLib Coversheet.Name 42
  ZiLib Coversheets 42
  ZiLib Coversheets.Count 42
  ZiLib Coversheets.Item 43
  ZiLib Device 43
  ZiLib Device.CurrentPage 44
  ZiLib Device.MessageBody 44
  ZiLib Device.Name 45
  ZiLib Device.User 47
  ZiLib Devices 47
  ZiLib Devices.Count 47
  ZiLib Devices.Item 48
  ZiLib DevStatusEnum 121
  ZiLib EventEnum 122
  ZiLib FaxTypeEnum 123
  ZiLib File 48
  ZiLib File.Delete 49
  ZiLib File.FileName 49
  ZiLib Files 49

© 2012 Equisys plc
Zetafax 2012 API Help

COM API 23, 34, 118
ZLib Files.Count 50
ZLib Files.Item 51
ZLib FormatEnum 123
ZLib HeaderEnum 124
ZLib Inbox 51
ZLib Inbox.CheckNewMsgStatus 52
ZLib Inbox.GetMsg 52
ZLib Inbox.GetMsgList 52
ZLib Letterhead 53
ZLib Letterhead.Name 53
ZLib Letterheads 53
ZLib Letterheads.count 54
ZLib Letterheads.Item 54
ZLib Link 55
ZLib Link.ConnectionOK 56
ZLib Link.LinkActive 56
ZLib Link.LocalStatus 56
ZLib Link.NumAcknowledged 57
ZLib Link.NumDeviceError 57
ZLib Link.NumRemoteServerError 58
ZLib Link.NumSenkOK 59
ZLib Link.NumUnAcknowledged 59
ZLib Link.RemoteServer 60
ZLib Link.RemoteStatus 60
ZLib Links 60
ZLib Links.Count 61
ZLib Links.Item 61
ZLib LinkStatusEnum 125
ZLib Message 62
ZLib Message.AbortMsg 63
ZLib Message.DeleteMsg 63
ZLib Message.GetMsgHistories 63
ZLib Message.GetMsgInfo 64
ZLib Message.HoldMsg 64
ZLib Message.MarkMsgAsRead 64
ZLib Message.ReleaseMsg 64
ZLib Message.RushMsg 65
ZLib Message.SendMsg 65
ZLib MessageHistories 65
ZLib MessageHistories.Count 66
ZLib MessageHistories.Item 66
ZLib MessageHistory 67
ZLib MessageHistory.AddrNum 67
ZLib MessageHistory.Connection 68
ZLib MessageHistory.Date 68
ZLib MessageHistory.Device 69
ZLib MessageHistory.ErrorCode 69
ZLib MessageHistory.Event 69
ZLib MessageHistory.Name 70
ZLib MessageHistory.Organisation 70
ZLib MessageHistory.PagesSent 71
ZLib MessageHistory.RemoteServer 71
ZLib MessageHistory.Route 71
ZLib MessageHistory.RouteParams 72
ZLib MessageInfo 72
ZLib MessageInfo.Body 73
ZLib MessageInfo.Comment 74
ZLib MessageInfo.CustomField 74
ZLib MessageInfo.ImagePath 75
ZLib MessageInfo.ImageSize 75
ZLib MessageInfo.ImageStream 75
ZLib MessageInfo.Organisation 75
ZLib MessageInfo.Status 76
ZLib MessageInfo.Subject 76
ZLib MessageInfo.Type 76
ZLib Messages 77
ZLib Messages.Count 78
ZLib Messages.Item 78
ZLib Messages.MsgDir 79
ZLib NewMessage 79
ZLib NewMessage.After 81
ZLib NewMessage.Attachments 81
ZLib NewMessage.Body 82
ZLib NewMessage.Charge 82
ZLib NewMessage.Comment 83
ZLib NewMessage.CoverSheet 83
ZLib NewMessage.Covertext 84
ZLib NewMessage.CustomField 84
ZLib NewMessage.Delete 84
ZLib NewMessage.Files 85
ZLib NewMessage.Format 85
ZLib NewMessage.From 86
ZLib NewMessage.Header 86
ZLib NewMessage.Hold 87
ZLib NewMessage.Letterhead 87
ZLib NewMessage.Preview 88
ZLib NewMessage.Priority 88
ZLib NewMessage.Quality 89
ZLib NewMessage.Recipients 89
ZLib NewMessage.Send 90
ZLib NewMessage.SendTime 90
ZLib NewMessage.Subject 90
ZLib NewMessage.Text 91
ZLib NewMessage.User 91
Index

COM API 23, 34, 118
ZLib Outbox 92
ZLib Outbox.CheckNewMsgStatus 92
ZLib Outbox.GetMsg 93
ZLib Outbox.GetMsgList 93
ZLib PriorityEnum 125
ZLib QualityEnum 126
ZLib Recipient 93
ZLib Recipient.Delete 94
ZLib Recipient.Fax 94
ZLib Recipient.Organisation 95
ZLib Recipient.To 95
ZLib Recipient.Type 96
ZLib Recipients 96
ZLib Recipients.AddFaxRecipient 97
ZLib Recipients.AddLANRecipient 98
ZLib Recipients.AddSMSRecipient 98
ZLib Recipients.Count 99
ZLib Recipients.Item 99
ZLib RouteEnum 126
ZLib SendTimeEnum 127
ZLib Server 99
ZLib Server.Check 100
ZLib Server.GetServerInfo 100
ZLib Server.Restart 100
ZLib Server.Start 101
ZLib Server.Stop 101
ZLib ServerInfo 101
ZLib ServerInfo.Coversheets 102
ZLib ServerInfo.Deferred 103
ZLib ServerInfo.Devices 103
ZLib ServerInfo.Letterheads 103
ZLib ServerInfo.Links 104
ZLib ServerInfo.MaxDevices 104
ZLib ServerInfo.MaxLinks 104
ZLib ServerInfo.RemoteAccept 105
ZLib ServerInfo.RouterSub 105
ZLib ServerInfo.Scanning 105
ZLib ServerInfo.Sending 106
ZLib ServerInfo.WaitingConvert 106
ZLib ServerInfo.WaitingDevice 106
ZLib ServerInfo.WaitingResend 107
ZLib StatusEnum 127
ZLib UserSession 107
ZLib UserSession.APIPrint 108
ZLib UserSession.Coversheet 108
ZLib UserSession.CreateNewMsg 109
ZLib UserSession.FromName 109
ZLib UserSession.Inbox 109
ZLib UserSession.Logoff 110
ZLib UserSession.Outbox 110
ZLib UserSession.SendSubmitFile 110
ZLib UserSession.Server 111
ZLib UserSession.SystemArea 111
ZLib UserSession.UserInDir 112
ZLib UserSession.UserOutDir 112
ZLib UserSession.UserArea 111
ZLib UserStatusEnum 129
ZLib ZfAPI 112
ZLib ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServerInfoFromAD 113
ZLib ZfAPI.GetZetafaxServersFromAD 114
ZLib ZfAPI.LogonAnonymous 115
ZLib ZfAPI.Logon 114
ZLib ZfAPI.RequestDir 115
ZLib ZfAPI.ServerDir 116
ZLib ZfAPI.SetZetafaxDirs 116
ZLib ZfAPI.SetZetafaxServerFromAD 116
ZLib ZfAPI.SystemDir 117
ZLib ZfAPI.UsersDir 117
ZLib ZfAPI.Version 118
ZLib ZfAPI.ZetafaxServer 118
ZLib ZfErr 129
ZLib Device.NumConnectFails 45
ZLib Device.NumPages 45
ZLib Device.NumSendFails 46
ZLib Device.NumSendOK 46
ZLib Files.Add 50
ZLib Link.NumReceived 58
ZLib Link.NumRejected 58
ZLib Link.NumTimedOut 59

- D -

Dynamic Data Exchange 227
Example DDE commands 229

- E -

Embedded Addressing 231
Attach 247
Charge 248
Charge code 248
Commands 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239,
240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249,
250, 251, 252
Coversheet 241

© 2012 Equisys plc
Embedded Addressing     231
  Delete     252
  Discard     249
  Fax     236
  From     240
  Header     246
  Information     232
  Letterhead     243
  Mail Merge     253
  Name     235
  Note     251
  Organisation     237
  Preview     239
  Priority     244
  Quality     242
  Send     238
  Subject     250
  Time     245
  To     234

- F -

FAQ     21

- G -

Getting Started     10

- I -

Installing the API     11

- S -

Support     20

- Z -

ZSUBMIT     255
  After     259
  Append     284
  Attach     260
  Bold     285
  Charge     261
  Comment     262
  Coversheet     263
  Covertext     264
  Creating SUBMIT files     256
  Date     286
  Delete     265
  Down     287
  Fax     277
  Field     279
  Field name     288
  Font     289
  Format     266
  From     267
  Header     268
  Hold     269
  Insert     290
  LAN User name     280
  Landscape     291
  Left margin     292
  Letterhead     270
  Message option lines     258
  Organisation     281
  Page     293
  Portrait     294
  Preview     271, 300
  Priority     272
  Quality     273
  Right     295
  Send     299
  SMS     278
  Subject     274
  Time     296
  To     282
  Underline     297
  User name     275

© 2012 Equisys plc